TREASURE ROOM

COL. GEORGE WASHINGTON FLOWERS
MEMORIAL COLLECTION

TRINITY COLLEGE LIBRARY
DURHAM, N.C.

The Gift of N. N. Flowers

Date 1931

Cameron

S M
M
LC
Q S
Z
F
C
16th Company.
9th Company.
8th Company
7th Company.
6th Company.
5th Company
4th Company
3d Company.
2nd Company
1st Company
5th Division
4th Division
3th Division
2nd Division
1st Division
Left Wing
Right Wing
C Colonel.
LC Lieut Colonel.
M Major
Q Qr Master.
A Adjutant
S M Sergt Major
F Field Music
Q S Q Master Ser
B Band
Color and guard
Right guide
Left guide.
Captain
First Lieut
Second Lieut
Third Lieut
First Serjt
Second Serjt
Third Serjt
Fourth Serjt
Fifth Serjt
2nd Platoon
1st Platoon
Lith. of Hoyer & Ludwig Richmond

A MANUAL

OF

Infantry and Rifle Tactics,

WITH

HONORS PAID BY THE TROOPS,

INSPECTIONS—REVIEWS, &c.

ABRIDGED AND COMPILED BY

LIEUT. COL. WM. H. RICHARDSON,

Graduate and formerly assistant Instructor of Tactics, Virginia Military Institute.

RICHMOND, VA.
PUBLISHED BY A. MORRIS.
1861.

CHAS. H. WYNNE, PRINTER, RICHMOND.

T2-R.
973.742
R726
RBR
Cr. 2471
TREASURE ROOM

PREFACE.

This compilation was undertaken to meet a pressing and urgent call for books of tactics, at a time when none of the more elaborate works, which had been in use, could be procured.

It is an abridgment of Hardee—the "Balance step," and "The manual of arms for the musket" being introduced from Gilham's manual, in the school of the soldier. Also, "Honors to be paid by the troops"—under which head will be found the forms for review, inspection, dress parade, guard mounting, duties of guards, &c.; placed after the tactical part of the book.

The arrangement of the book is not such as it would have been, had not unavoidable circumstances interposed to change it. But this will not materially interfere with its use.

Paragraphs retain their original numbers, as in the originals.

The work is offered to the military of the Confederate States, with the hope that it may be found useful as a book of reference—although with diffidence—for

176384

the haste in which it was commenced, and the numerous difficulties attending its preparation, have, it is feared, been productive of errors, which the compiler will regret—but he trusts will be charitably overlooked.

W. H. R., Jr.

Richmond, June, 1861.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

TITLE FIRST.

Article First.

	PAGE
Formation of a regiment in order of battle or in line,	13
Posts of Company officers, sergeants, and corporals,	14
Posts of field officers and regimental staff.....	15
Posts of field music and band.....	16
Color-guard	17
General guides.....	17

Article Second.

Instruction of the battalion.....	18
Instruction of sergeants.....	18
" " corporals.....	19
Commands.....	19

TITLE SECOND.

SCHOOL OF THE SOLDIER.

Part First.

General rules and division of the school of the soldier.....	20
Lesson I.—Position of the soldier.....	21
Lesson II.—Facings.....	22
Lesson III.—Balance step.....	23

176384

PAGE

Principles of the direct step, in common and quick time..... 25
Lesson IV.—Principles of the double quick step.... 26

Part Second.

General rules..... 28
Lesson I.—Principles of shouldered arms..... 29
Lesson II.—Manual of arms for the rifle..... 30
Lesson III.—Load in four times, and at will..... 49
Lesson IV.—Firings 52
Lesson V.—Fire and load, kneeling, and do. lying.. 54
Lesson VI.—Bayonet exercise..... 55

Manual of arms for the musket.

Principles of shouldered arms..... 57
Support arms..... 57
Present arms..... 58
Order arms..... 59
Charge bayonet..... 60
Load in ten times..... 61
Load in four times, and unfix bayonet..... 67
Fix bayonet..... 68
Secure and trail arms..... 69
Right shoulder shift arms, Arms at will, ... 70
Inspection of arms 71
Fix bayonet, spring rammers, Arms-port, ... 72

Part Third.

Lesson I.—Alignments 73
Lesson II.—March by the front, ditto, in double quick time. Face about in marching, and march backwards..... 75
Lesson III.—March by the flank, ditto, in double quick time..... 79

PAGE

Lesson IV.—General principles of wheeling—from a halt, marching. Turning. Both, in double quick time 83
Stack arms..... 87
Take arms..... 88

TITLE THIRD.

SCHOOL OF THE COMPANY.

General rules and division of the school of the company 90
Manner of forming the company..... 90

Lesson First.

Article I.—To open ranks..... 92
Article II.—Alignments in open ranks..... 93
Article III.—To close ranks..... 94
Article IV.—Alignments and manual of arms in closed ranks..... 95

Lesson Second.

Article I.—To load in four times, and at will..... 96
Article II.—To fire by company..... 96
Article III.—To fire by file..... 97
Article IV.—To fire by rank..... 98
Article V.—To fire by the rear rank..... 99

Lesson Third.

Article I.—To advance in line of battle..... 100
Article II.—To halt the company marching in line of battle, and to align it..... 102
Article III.—Oblique march in line of battle..... 103

PAGE

ARTICLE IV.—To mark time, to march in double quick time, and the back step..... 104
ARTICLE V.—To march in retreat..... 105

LESSON FOURTH.

ARTICLE I.—To march by the flank..... 107
ARTICLE II.—To change direction by file..... 109
ARTICLE III.—To halt the company marching by a flank, and to face it to the front..... 109
ARTICLE IV.—The company marching by the flank, to form it on the right (or left), by file, into line, 110
ARTICLE V.—The company marching by the flank, to form it by company in platoon into line, and cause it to face to the right and left, in marching..... 112

LESSON FIFTH.

ARTICLE I.—To break into column by platoon, either at a halt, or marching..... 114
ARTICLE II.—To march in column..... 118
ARTICLE III.—To change direction..... 119
ARTICLE IV.—To halt the column..... 121
ARTICLE V.—Being in column by platoon, to form to the right (or left) into line of battle, either at a halt, or marching..... 122

LESSON SIXTH.

ARTICLE I.—To break the company into platoons, and to re-form the company..... 127
ARTICLE II.—Being in column, to break files to the rear, and to cause them to re-enter the line..... 129
ARTICLE III.—To march in column in route, and to execute the movements incident thereto..... 132
ARTICLE IV.—Countermarch..... 137
ARTICLE V.—Being in column by platoon, to form on the right (or left) into line of battle..... 139

PAGE
Formation of a company from two ranks into single rank, and reciprocally..... 141
Formation of a company from two ranks into four, and reciprocally, at a halt, and in march..... 143
Manual of the sword or sabre, for officers..... 147
Color-salute..... 148
Manual for relieving sentinels..... 148
Instruction for parade-rest..... 149

TITLE FOURTH.

SCHOOL OF THE BATTALION.

Formation of the battalion..... 150
Composition and march of the color-escort..... 150
Honors paid to the color..... 151

Part First.

Article I.—To open and close ranks..... 152
Article III.—The firings..... 153

Part Second.

Article I.—To break into column, by company, or division, to the right or left, from a halt, and in march..... 158
Article II.—To break to the rear by the right or left of companies, from a halt and in march. To advance or retire by the right or left of companies, from a halt, or in march. From same movement to form line to the front..... 160
Article III.—Ploy the battalion into close column, from a halt, or in march..... 164

Part Third.

Article I.—March in column at full distance—the right about..... 169

PAGE.

ARTICLE III.—Change of direction in column at full distance..... 171
ARTICLE IV.—Halt the column..... 172
ARTICLE V.—Close the column to half distance, or in mass, on the leading or rear company, from a halt, or in march..... 173
ARTICLE VI.—March in column at half distance or closed in mass..... 177
ARTICLE VII.—Change direction in column at half distance..... 177
ARTICLE VIII.—Change direction of a column closed in mass, marching or from a halt..... 178
ARTICLE IX.—Take distances..... 181
ARTICLE X.—Countermarch of a column at full or half distance; or closed in mass..... 185
ARTICLE XI.—Being in column by company, closed in mass, to form divisions, from a halt, or in march..... 187

PART FOURTH.

ARTICLE I.—Manner of determining the line of battle..... 190
ARTICLE II.—Different modes of passing from column at full distance into line of battle..... 190
ARTICLE III.—Formation in line of battle by two movements..... 204
ARTICLE IV.—Different modes of passing from column at half distance into line of battle..... 206
ARTICLE V.—Deployment of columns closed in mass, 208

PART FIFTH.

ARTICLE I.—To advance in line of battle..... 216
ARTICLE III.—To halt the battalion, marching in line of battle, and to align it..... 220
ARTICLE V.—To march in retreat in line of battle... 223
ARTICLE VI.—To halt the battalion, marching in retreat, and to face it to the front..... 225

PAGE.
ARTICLE VIII.—Passage of obstacles, advancing and retreating..... 225
ARTICLE IX.—To pass a defile, in retreat, by the right or left flank..... 229
ARTICLE X.—To march by the flank..... 231
ARTICLE XI.—To form on the right or left by file into line..... 233
ARTICLE XII.—Changes of front..... 235
ARTICLE XIII.—Formation and deployment of the column doubled on the centre, from a halt, and in marching, and to form it into line to the right or left..... 238
ARTICLE XIV.—Dispositions against cavalry..... 244
ARTICLE XV.—The rally..... 258

INSTRUCTION FOR SKIRMISHERS.

General principles, &c..... 260
ARTICLE I.—Deployments; extend or close intervals; relieve skirmishers..... 262
ARTICLE II.—March to the front; in retreat; by the flank; change direction..... 271
ARTICLE III.—Firings..... 276
ARTICLE IV.—The rally and the assembly..... 280
ARTICLE V.—Deploy a battalion as skirmishers, to rally it..... 289

HONORS PAID BY THE TROOPS.

INSPECTIONS—REVIEWS, &c.

Compliments to officers of high rank—civil and military..... 294
Artillery salutes..... 297
Escorts of honor..... 298

PAGE
Funeral honors 298
Form of inspection for infantry 302
Forms of parade 306
To form the regiment or battalion 306
Dress parade 307
Review of a battalion of infantry 311
Guard-mounting 317
Reception of one body of troops by another 322
Musters 323
The roster, or details for service 324
Duties of guards 326
Guards 330
Police Guards 332
Pickets 336
Grand-guards and outposts 336

ARTICLE XIII.

DUTIES OF CAPTAINS—COMPANIES—DUTIES IN CAMP AND GARRISON, ETC.

Duties of Captains, &c 343
Duties in camp and garrison 346

Camps.

Camp of infantry 349
Cautionments 350
Marches 351

SOLDIERS RATIONS—mode of cooking them 355

SUGGESTIONS TO SOLDIERS 358

RIFLE AND LIGHT INFANTRY TACTICS.

TITLE FIRST.

Article First.

Formation of a Regiment in order of battle, or in line.

1. A REGIMENT is composed of ten companies, which will habitually be posted from right to left, in the following order: first, sixth, fourth, ninth, third, eighth, fifth, tenth, seventh, second, according to the rank of captains.

2. With a less number of companies the same principle will be observed, viz: the first captain will command the right company, the second captain the left company, the third captain the right centre company, and so on.

3. The companies thus posted will be designated from right to left, *first* company, *second* company, &c. This designation will be observed in the manœuvres.

4. The first two companies on the right, whatever their denomination, will form the *first division;* the next two companies the *second division;* and so on, to the left.

5. Each company will be divided into two equal parts, which will be designated as the first and second platoon, counting from the right; and each platoon, in like manner, will be subdivided into two sections.

6. In all exercises and manœuvres, every regiment, or part of a regiment, composed of two or more companies, will be designated as a battalion.

7. The color, with a guard to be hereinafter designated, will be posted on the left of the right centre battalion company. That company, and all on its right, will be denominated the *right wing* of the battalion; the remaining companies the *left wing*.

8. The formation of a regiment is in two ranks; and each company will be formed into two ranks, in the following manner: the corporals will be posted in the front rank, and on the right and left of platoons, according to height; the tallest corporal and the tallest man will form the first file, the next two tallest men will form the second file, and so on to the last file, which will be composed of the shortest corporal and the shortest man.

9. The odd and even files, numbered as one, two, in the company, from right to left, will form groups of four men, who will be designated *comrades in battle*.

10. The distance from one rank to another will be thirteen inches, measured from the breasts of the rear rank men to the backs or knapsacks of the front rank men.

11. For manœuvring, the companies of a battalion will always be equalized, by transferring men from the strongest to the weakest companies.

Posts of Company Officers, Sergeants and Corporals.

12. The company officers and sergeants are nine in number, and will be posted in the following manner:

13. The *captain* on the right of the company, touching with the left elbow.

14. The *first sergeant* in the rear rank, touching with the left elbow, and covering the captain. In the manœuvres he will be denominated *covering sergeant*, or *right guide* of the company.

15. The remaining officers and sergeants will be posted as file closers, and two paces behind the rear rank.

16. The *first lieutenant*, opposite the centre of the fourth section.

17. The *second lieutenant*, opposite the centre of the first platoon.

18. The *third lieutenant*, opposite the centre of the second platoon.

19. The *second sergeant*, opposite the second file from the left of the company. In the manœuvres he will be designated *left guide* of the company.

20. The *third sergeant*, opposite the second file from the right of the second platoon.

21. The *fourth sergeant*, opposite the second file from the left of the first platoon.

22. The *fifth sergeant*, opposite the second file from the right of the first platoon.

23. In the left or tenth company of the battalion, the second sergeant will be posted in the front rank, and on the left of the battalion.

24. The corporals will be posted in the front rank, as prescribed No. 8.

25. Absent officers and sergeants will be replaced—officers by sergeants, and sergeants by corporals. The colonel may detach a first lieutenant from one company to command another, of which both the captain and first lieutenant are absent; but this authority will give no right to a lieutenant to demand to be so detached.

Posts of Field Officers and Regimental Staff.

26. The field officers, colonel, lieutenant colonel and major, are supposed to be mounted, and on active service shall be on horseback. The adjutant, when the battalion is manœuvring, will be on foot.

27. The colonel will take post thirty paces in rear

of the file-closers, and opposite the centre of the battalion. This distance will be reduced whenever there is a reduction in the front of the battalion.

28. The lieutenant colonel and the major will be opposite the centres of the right and left wings respectively, and twelve paces in rear of the file-closers. The junior major, if there be one, twelve paces behind the centre of the battalion. In column, he is six paces from the guides, abreast of the centre company or division.

29. The adjutant and sergeant major will be opposite the right and left of the battalion, respectively, and eight paces in rear of the file-closers.

30. The adjutant and sergeant major will aid the lieutenant colonel and major, respectively, in the manœuvres.

31. The colonel, if absent, will be replaced by the lieutenant colonel, and the latter by the major. If all the field officers be absent, the senior captain will command the battalion; but if either be present, he will not call the senior captain to act as field officer, except in case of evident necessity.

32. The quarter-master, surgeon, and other staff officers, in one rank, on the left of the colonel, and three paces in his rear.

33. The quarter-master sergeant, on a line with the front rank of the field music, and two paces on the right.

Posts of Field Music and Band.

34. The buglers will be drawn up in four ranks, and posted twelve paces in rear of the file-closers, the left opposite the centre of the left centre company. The senior principal musician will be two paces in front of the field music, and the other two paces in the rear.

35. The regimental band, if there be one, will be

drawn up in two or four ranks, according to its numbers, and posted five paces in rear of the field music, having one of the principal musicians at its head.

Color-guard.

36. In each battalion the color-guard will be composed of eight corporals, and posted on the left of the right centre company, of which company, for the time being, the guard will make a part.

37. The front rank will be composed of a sergeant, to be selected by the colonel, who will be called, for the time, *color-bearer*, with the two ranking corporals, respectively, on his right and left; the rear rank will be composed of the three corporals next in rank; and the three remaining corporals will be posted in their rear, and on the line of file-closers. The left guide of the color company, when these three last named corporals are in the rank of file-closers, will be immediately on their left.

38. In battalions with less than five companies present, there will be no color-guard, and no display of colors, except it may be at reviews.

39. The corporals for the color-guard will be selected from those most distinguished for regularity and precision, as well in their positions under arms, as in their marching. The latter advantage, and a just carriage of the person, are to be more particularly sought for in the selection of the color-bearer.

General Guides.

40. There will be two *general* guides in each battalion, selected, for the time, by the colonel, from among the sergeants (other than first sergeants) the most distinguished for carriage under arms, and accuracy in marching.

41. These sergeants will be respectively denominated, in the manœuvres, *right general guide*, and *left*

general guide, and be posted in the line of file-closers; the first in rear of the right, and the second in rear of the left flank of the battalion.

Article Second.

Instruction of the Battalion.

42. Every commanding officer is responsible for the instruction of his command. He will assemble the officers together for theoretical and practical instruction as often as he may judge necessary, and when unable to attend to this duty in person, it will be discharged by the officer next in rank.

43. Captains will be held responsible for the instruction of their non-commissioned officers, and the adjutant for the instruction of the non-commissioned staff.

45. In the school of the soldier, the company officers will be the instructors of squads; but if there be not a sufficient number of company officers present, intelligent sergeants may be substituted.

46. In the school of the company, the lieutenant-colonel and the major, under the colonel, will be the principal instructors, substituting frequently the captain of the company, and sometimes one of the lieutenants.

49. Instructors will explain, in a few clear and precise words, the movement to be executed; and not to overburden the memory of the men, they will always use the same terms to explain the same principles.

51. The sabre bayonet should only be fixed when required to be used, either for attack or defence; the exercises and manœuvres will be executed without the bayonet.

Instruction of Sergeants.

57. Their theoretical instruction should include the School of the Soldier, the School of the Com-

pany, and the Drill for Skirmishers. They should likewise know all the details of service, and the regulations prescribing their duties in garrison and in campaign.

Instruction of Corporals.

59. Their theoretical instruction should include the School of the Soldier, and such regulations as prescribe their duties in garrison and in campaign.

Commands.

There are three kinds.

62. The command of *caution*, which is *attention.*

63. The *preparatory command*, which indicates the movement which is to be executed.

64. The command of *execution*, such as *march* or *halt*, or, in the manual of arms, the part of command which causes an execution.

65. The tone of command should be animated, distinct, and of a loudness proportioned to the number of men under instruction.

66. The command *attention* is pronounced at the top of the voice, dwelling on the last syllable.

67. The command of *execution* will be pronounced in a tone firm and brief.

68. The commands of caution and the preparatory commands are herein distinguished by *italics*, those of execution by CAPITALS.

69. Those preparatory commands which, from their length, are difficult to be pronounced at once, must be divided into two or three parts, with an ascending progression in the tone of command, but always in such a manner that the tone of execution may be more energetic and elevated; the divisions are indicated by a hyphen. The parts of commands which are placed in a parenthesis, are not pronounced.

TITLE SECOND.

SCHOOL OF THE SOLDIER.

General Rules and division of the School of the Soldier.

70. The object of this school being the individual and progressive instruction of the recruits, the instructor never requires a movement to be executed until he has given an exact explanation of it; and he executes, himself, the movement which he commands, so as to join example to precept. He accustoms the recruit to take, by himself, the position which is explained—teaches him to rectify it only when required by his want of intelligence—and sees that all the movements are performed without precipitation.

71. Each movement should be understood before passing to another. After they have been properly executed in the order laid down in each lesson, the instructor no longer confines himself to that order; on the contrary, he should change it, that he may judge of the intelligence of the men.

72. The instructor allows the men to rest at the end of each part of the lessons, and oftener, if he thinks proper, especially at the commencement; for this purpose he commands REST.

73. At the command REST, the soldier is no longer required to preserve immobility, or to remain in his place. If the instructor wishes merely to relieve the attention of the recruit, he commands, *in place*—REST; the soldier is then not required to preserve his immobility, but he always keeps one of his feet in its place.

74. When the instructor wishes to commence the

instruction, he commands—ATTENTION; at this command, the soldier takes his position, remains motionless, and fixes his attention.

75. The *School of the Soldier* will be divided into three parts: the first, comprehending what ought to be taught to recruits without arms; the second, the manual of arms, the loadings and firings; the third, the principles of alignment, the march by the front, the different steps, the march by the flank, the principles of wheeling, and those of change of direction; also, long marches in double quick time and the run.

PART FIRST.

77. This will be taught, if practicable, to one recruit at a time; but three or four may be united, when the number be great, compared with that of the instructors. In this case, the recruits will be placed in a single rank, at one pace from each other. In this part, the recruits will be without arms.

LESSON I.

Position of the Soldier.

78. Heels on the same line, as near each other as the conformation of the man will permit;

The feet turned out equally, and forming with each other something less than a right angle;

The knees straight without stiffness;

The body erect on the hips, inclining a little forward;

The shoulders square and falling equally;

The arms hanging naturally;

The elbows near the body;

The palm of the hand turned a little to the front, the little finger behind the seam of the pantaloons;

The head erect and square to the front, without constraint;

The chin near the stock, without covering it;

The eyes fixed straight to the front, and striking the ground about the distance of fifteen paces.

80. The instructor having given the recruit the position of the soldier without arms, will now teach him the turning of the head and eyes. He will command:

1. *Eyes*—RIGHT. 2. FRONT.

81. At the word *right*, the recruit will turn the head gently, so as to bring the inner corner of the left eye in a line with the buttons of the coat, the eyes fixed on the line of the eyes of the men in, or supposed to be in, the same rank.

82. At the second command, the head will resume the direct or habitual position.

83. The movement of *Eyes*—LEFT will be executed by inverse means.

84. The instructor will take care that the movement of the head does not derange the squareness of the shoulders, which will happen if the movement of the former be too sudden.

LESSON II.

Facings.

88. Facing to the right and left will be executed in one *time*, or pause. The instructor will command:

1. *Squad.* 2. *Right* (or *left*)—FACE.

89. At the second command, raise the right foot slightly, turn on the left heel, raising the toes a little, and then replace the right heel by the side of the left, and on the same line.

90. The full face to the rear (or front) will be exe-

cuted in two *times*, or pauses, the instructor will command:

1. *Squad.* 2. *About*—FACE.

91. (*First time.*) At the word *about*, the recruit will turn on the left heel, bring the left toe to the front, carry the right foot to the rear, the hollow opposite to, and full three inches from, the left heel, the feet square to each other.

92. (*Second time.*) At the word *face*, the recruit will turn on both heels, raise the toes a little, extend the hams, face to the rear, bringing, at the same time, the right heel by the side of the left.

93. The instructor will take care that these motions do not derange the position of the body.

*Balance Step.**

87. Before commencing the march the soldier should always be instructed in the balance step, the object of which is to teach him the free movement of his limbs, while he at the same time preserves perfect squareness of the shoulders, with the greatest steadiness of the body; no labor should be spared to attain this object, which lies at the very foundation of good marching.

The squad being at attention, the instructor commands:

Left foot—FORWARD.

At this command, the soldier will throw his left foot gently forward, about twenty-four inches, balancing his body well on the right foot, without changing the position of the shoulders, and without the body losing its erect position. The toe should be turned out as in the position of the soldier, the foot about three

*The numbers of these paragraphs are retained with them, from Gilham's Manual.

inches from the ground and very nearly parallel to it, the toe being very slightly depressed.

At the command:

Left foot—REAR.

The left foot is brought gently back, the ball of the left foot close to the right heel, the leg straight, toe raised, and heel depressed.

As soon as the soldier becomes steady in the new position, the instructor repeats the command, left foot forward, then left foot rear, for several times, and then commands:

HALT.

At which the left foot, either advanced or to the rear, is brought to the right, as in the position of the soldier.

The instructor then causes the soldier to balance on the left foot, by advancing and retiring the right, as has been directed for the left.

The Direct Step.

88. After the soldier is sufficiently instructed in the balance step to execute it on either foot without losing his balance, the instructor will proceed to instruct him in the mechanism of the direct step. For this purpose he will command:

1. *By the numbers*—FORWARD. 2. ONE.

At the command *one*, the soldier will throw forward the left foot, as in the position of left foot forward; the instructor then commands:

TWO.

At this command the weight of the body is thrown forward, the left foot striking the ground without

shock, at the distance of twenty-eight inches from the right; the body assumes the perpendicular position, and the right foot is brought up to the position of right foot rear. The right foot is then brought forward at the command *one*, and the step completed at the command *two;* thus the squad is made to advance step by step. The halt is executed as in the balance step.

Lesson III.

Principles of the Direct Step.

94. The length of the direct step, or pace, in common time, will be twenty-eight inches, reckoning from heel to heel, and in swiftness, at the rate of ninety in a minute.

95. The instructor, seeing the recruit confirmed in his position, will explain to him the principles and mechanism of this step—placing himself six or seven paces from, and facing to, the recruit. He will himself execute slowly the step in the way of illustration, and then command:

1. *Squad, forward.* 2. *Common time.* 3. March.*

96. At the first command, the recruit will throw the weight of the body on the right leg, without bending the left knee.

97. At the third command, he will smartly, but without a jerk, carry straight forward the left foot twenty-eight inches from the right, the sole near the ground, the ham extended, the toe a little depressed, and as also the knee slightly turned out; he will, at the same time, throw the weight of the body forward, and plant flat the left foot, without shock, precisely at the distance where it finds itself from the right when the weight of the body is brought forward, the whole of

* The 2d and 3d of these commands will be given whenever, in the manœuvres, it is desirable to move at the *ordinary* step.

which will now rest on the advanced foot. The recruit will next, in like manner, advance the right foot and plant it as above, the heel twenty-eight inches from the heel of the left foot, and thus continue to march without crossing the legs, or striking the one against the other, without turning the shoulders, and preserving always the face direct to the front.

98. When the instructor shall wish to arrest the march, he will command:

1. *Squad.* 2. HALT.

99. At the second command, which will be given at the instant when either foot is coming to the ground, the foot in the rear will be brought up, and planted by the side of the other, without shock.

100. The instructor will indicate, from time to time, to the recruit, the cadence of the step by giving the command *one* at the instant of raising a foot, and *two* at the instant it ought to be planted, observing the cadence of ninety steps in a minute. This method will contribute greatly to impress upon the mind the two motions into which the step is naturally divided.

102. The principles of the step in quick time are the same as for common time, but its swiftness is at the rate of one hundred and ten steps per minute.

103. The instructor wishing the squad to march in quick time, will command:

1. *Squad, forward.* 2. MARCH.

LESSON IV.

Principles of the Double Quick Step.

104. The length of the double quick step is thirty-three inches, and its swiftness at the rate of one hundred and sixty-five steps per minute.

105. The instructor wishing to teach the recruits

the principles and mechanism of the double quick step, will command:

1. *Double quick step.* 2. MARCH.

106. At the first command, the recruit will raise his hands to a level with his hips, the hands closed, the nails towards the body, the elbows to the rear.

107. At the second command he will raise to the front his left leg bent, in order to give to the knee the greatest elevation, the part of the leg between the knee and the instep vertical, the toe depressed; he will then replace his foot in its former position; with the right leg he will execute what has just been prescribed for the left, and the alternate movement of the legs will be continued until the command:

1. *Squad.* 2. HALT.

108. At the second command, the recruit will bring the foot which is raised by the side of the other, and dropping at the same time his hands by his side, will resume the position of the soldier without arms.

109. The instructor placing himself seven or eight paces from, and facing the recruit, will indicate the cadence by the commands, *one* and *two*, given alternately at the instant each foot should be brought to the ground, which at first will be in common time, but its rapidity will be gradually augmented.

110. The recruit being sufficiently established in the principles of this step, the instructor will command:

1. *Squad forward.* 2. *Double quick.* 3. MARCH.

111. At the first command, the recruit will throw the weight of his body on the right leg.

112. At the second command, he will place his arms as indicated No. 106.

113. At the third command, he will carry forward

the left foot, the leg slightly bent, the knee somewhat raised—will plant his left foot, the toe first, thirty-three inches from the right, and with the right foot will then execute what has just been prescribed for the left. This alternate movement of the legs will take place by throwing the weight of the body on the foot that is planted, and by allowing a natural, oscillatory motion to the arms.

114. The double quick step may be executed with different degrees of swiftness. Under urgent circumstances the cadence of this step may be increased to one hundred and eighty per minute. At this rate a distance of four thousand yards would be passed over in about twenty-five minutes.

115. The recruits will be exercised also in running.

116. The principles are the same as for the double quick step, the only difference consisting in a greater degree of swiftness.

117. It is recommended in marching at double quick time, or the run, that the men should breathe as much as possible through the nose, keeping the mouth closed. Experience has proved that, by conforming to this principle, a man can pass over a much longer distance and with less fatigue.

PART SECOND.

GENERAL RULES.

118. The instructor will not pass the men to this second part until they shall be well established in the position of the body, and in the manner of marching at the different steps.

119. He will then unite four men, whom he will place in the same rank, elbow to elbow, and instruct them in the position of shouldered arms, as follows:

MANUAL OF ARMS FOR THE RIFLE.

Lesson I.

Principles of Shouldered Arms.

120. The recruit being placed as explained in the first lesson of the first part, the instructor will cause him to bend the right arm slightly, and place the piece in it, in the following manner:

121. The piece in the right hand—the barrel nearly vertical and resting in the hollow of the shoulder—the guard to the front, the arm hanging nearly at its full length near the body; the thumb and fore-finger embracing the guard, the remaining fingers closed together, and grasping the swell of the stock just under the cock, which rests on the little finger.

Lesson II.

Manual of Arms.

127. The manual of arms will be taught to four men, placed, at first, in one rank, elbow to elbow, and afterwards in two ranks.

128. Each command will be executed in one *time* (or pause), but this time will be divided into motions, the better to make known the mechanism.

129. The rate (or swiftness) of each motion, in the manual of arms, with the exceptions herein indicated, is fixed at the ninetieth part of a minute; but, in order not to fatigue the attention, the instructor will, at first, look more particularly to the execution of the motions, without requiring a nice observance of the cadence, to which he will bring the recruits progressively, and after they shall have become a little familiarized with the handling of the piece.

130. As the motions relative to the cartridge, to the rammer, and to the fixing and unfixing of the bayonet, cannot be executed at the rate prescribed, nor even with a uniform swiftness, they will not be subjected to that cadence. The instructor will, however, labor to cause these motions to be executed with promptness, and, above all, with regularity.

131. The last syllable of the command will decide the brisk execution of the first motion of each time (or pause). The commands *two*, *three*, and *four*, will decide the brisk execution of the other motions. As soon as the recruits shall well comprehend the positions of the several motions of a time, they will be taught to execute the time without resting on its different motions; the mechanism of the time will nevertheless be observed, as well to give a perfect use of the piece, as to avoid the sinking of, or slurring over, either of the motions.

132. The manual of arms will be taught in the following progression. The instructor will command:

Support—ARMS.

One time and three motions.

133. (*First motion.*) Bring the piece, with the right hand, perpendicularly to the front and between the eyes, the barrel to the rear; seize the piece with the left hand at the lower band, raise this hand as high as the chin, and seize the piece at the same time with the right hand four inches below the cock.

134. (*Second motion.*) Turn the piece with the right hand, the barrel to the front; carry the piece to the left shoulder, and pass the fore-arm extended on the breast between the right hand and the cock; support the cock against the left fore-arm, the left hand resting on the right breast.

135. (*Third motion.*) Drop the right hand by the side.

136. When the instructor may wish to give repose in this position, he will command:

REST.

137. At this command, the recruits will bring up smartly the right hand to the handle of the piece (small of the stock), when they will not be required to preserve silence, or steadiness of position.

138. When the instructor may wish the recruits to pass from this position to that of silence and steadiness, he will command:

1. *Attention.* 2. SQUAD.

139. At the second word, the recruits will resume the position of the third motion of *support arms.*

Shoulder—ARMS.

One time and three motions.

140. (*First motion.*) Grasp the piece with the right hand under and against the left fore-arm; seize it with the left hand at the lower band, the thumb extended; detach the piece slightly from the shoulder, the left fore-arm along the stock.

141. (*Second motion.*) Carry the piece vertically to the right shoulder with both hands, the rammer to the front, change the position of the right hand so as to embrace the guard with the thumb and fore-finger, slip the left hand to the height of the shoulder, the fingers extended and joined, the right arm nearly straight.

142. (*Third motion.*) Drop the left hand quickly by the side.

Present—ARMS.

One time and two motions.

143. (*First motion.*) With the right hand bring the piece erect before the centre of the body, the rammer

to the front; at the same time seize the piece with the left hand half-way between the guide sight and lower band, the thumb extended along the barrel and against the stock, the fore-arm horizontal and resting against the body, the hand as high as the elbow.

144. (*Second motion.*) Grasp the small of the stock with the right hand below and against the guard.

Shoulder—ARMS.

One time and two motions.

145. (*First motion.*) Bring the piece to the right shoulder, at the same time change the position of the right hand so as to embrace the guard with the thumb and fore-finger, slip up the left hand to the height of the shoulder, the fingers extended and joined, the right arm nearly straight.

146. (*Second motion.*) Drop the left hand quickly by the side.

Order—ARMS.

One time and two motions.

147. (*First motion.*) Seize the piece briskly with the left hand near the upper band, and detach it slightly from the shoulder with the right hand; loosen the grasp of the right hand, lower the piece with the left, re-seize the piece with the right hand above the lower band, the little finger in rear of the barrel, the butt about four inches from the ground, the right hand supported against the hip, drop the left hand by the side.

148. (*Second motion.*) Let the piece slip through the right hand to the ground by opening slightly the fingers, and take the position about to be described.

Position of Order Arms.

149. The hand low, the barrel between the thumb and fore-finger extended along the stock; the other

fingers extended and joined; the muzzle about two inches from the right shoulder; the rammer in front; the toe (or beak) of the butt, against, and in a line with the toe of the right foot, the barrel perpendicular.

150. When the instructor may wish to give repose in this position, he will command:

REST.

151. At this command, the recruits will not be required to preserve silence or steadiness.

152. When the instructor may wish the recruits to pass from this position to that of silence and steadiness, he will command:

1. *Attention.* 2. SQUAD.

153. At the second word, the recruits will resume the position of *order arms.*

Shoulder—ARMS.

One time and two motions.

154. (*First motion.*) Raise the piece vertically with the right hand to the height of the right breast, and opposite the shoulder, the elbow close to the body; seize the piece with the left hand below the right, and drop quickly the right hand to grasp the piece at the swell of the stock, the thumb and fore-finger embracing the guard; press the piece against the shoulder with the left hand, the right arm nearly straight.

155. (*Second motion.*) Drop the left hand quickly by the side.

Load in nine times.

1. LOAD.*

One time and one motion.

156. Grasp the piece with the left hand as high as the right elbow, and bring it vertically opposite the middle of the body, shift the right hand to the upper band, place the butt between the feet, the barrel to the front; seize it with the left hand near the muzzle, which should be three inches from the body; carry the right hand to the cartridge box.

2. *Handle*—CARTRIDGE.

One time and one motion.

157. Seize the cartridge with the thumb and next two fingers, and place it between the teeth.

3. *Tear*—CARTRIDGE.

One time and one motion.

158. Tear the paper to the powder, hold the cartridge upright between the thumb and first two fingers, near the top; in this position place it in front of and near the muzzle—the back of the hand to the front.

4. *Charge*—CARTRIDGE.

One time and one motion.

159. Empty the powder into the barrel; disengage the ball from the paper with the right hand and the

---

* Whenever the loadings and firings are to be executed, the instructor will cause the cartridge boxes to be brought to the front.

thumb and first two fingers of the left; insert it into the bore, the pointed end uppermost, and press it down with the right thumb; seize the head of the rammer with the thumb and fore-finger, of the right hand, the other fingers closed, the elbows near the body.

5. *Draw*—Rammer.

One time and three motions.

160. (*First motion.*) Half draw the rammer by extending the right arm; steady it in this position with the left thumb; grasp the rammer near the muzzle with the right hand, the little finger uppermost, the nails to the front, the thumb extended along the rammer.

161. (*Second motion.*) Clear the rammer from the pipes by again extending the arm; the rammer in the prolongation of the pipes.

162. (*Third motion.*) Turn the rammer, the little end of the rammer passing near the left shoulder; place the head of the rammer on the ball, the back of the hand to the front.

6. *Ram*—Cartridge.

One time and one motion.

163. Insert the rammer as far as the right, and steady it in this position with the thumb of the left hand; seize the rammer at the small end with the thumb and fore-finger of the right hand, the back of the hand to the front; press the ball home, the elbows near the body.

7. *Return*—Rammer.

One time and three motions.

164. (*First motion.*) Draw the rammer half-way out, and steady it in this position with the left thumb;

grasp it near the muzzle with the right hand, the little finger uppermost, the nails to the front, the thumb along the rammer; clear the rammer from the bore by extending the arm, the nails to the front, the rammer in the prolongation of the bore.

165. (*Second motion.*) Turn the rammer, the head of the rammer passing near the left shoulder, and insert it in the pipes until the right hand reaches the muzzle, the nails to the front.

166. (*Third motion.*) Force the rammer home by placing the little finger of the right hand on the head of the rammer; pass the left hand down the barrel to the extent of the arm, without depressing the shoulder.

8. Prime.*

One time and two motions.

167. (*First motion.*) With the left hand raise the piece till the hand is as high as the eye, grasp the small of the stock with the right hand; half face to the right; place, at the same time, the right foot behind and at right angles with the left; the hollow of the right foot against the left heel. Slip the left hand down to the lower band, the thumb along the stock, the left elbow against the body; bring the piece to the right side, the butt below the right forearm—the small of the stock against the body and two inches below the right breast, the barrel upwards, the muzzle on a level with the eye.

168. (*Second motion.*) Half cock with the thumb of the right hand, the fingers supported against the

---

* If Maynard's primer be used, the command will be, *load in eight times*, and the eighth command will be, *shoulder arms*, and executed from *return rammer*, in one time and two motions, as follows:

(*First motion.*) Raise the piece with the left hand, and take the position of shoulder arms, as indicated No. 145.

(*Second motion.*) Drop the left hand quickly by the side.

guard and the small of the stock—remove the old cap with one of the fingers of the right hand, and with the thumb and fore-finger of the same hand take a cap from the pouch, place it on the nipple, and press it down with the thumb; seize the small of the stock with the right hand.

9 *Shoulder*—ARMS.

One time and two motions.

169. (*First motion.*) Bring the piece to the right shoulder and support it there with the left hand, face to the front; bring the right heel to the side of and on a line with the left; grasp the piece with the right hand as indicated in the position of *shoulder arms.*

170. (*Second motion.*) Drop the left hand quickly by the side.

READY.

One time and three motions.

171. (*First motion.*) Raise the piece slightly with the right hand, making a half face to the right on the left heel; carry the right foot to the rear, and place it at right angles to the left, the hollow of it opposite to, and against the left heel; grasp the piece with the left hand at the lower band and detach it slightly from the shoulder.

172. (*Second motion.*) Bring down the piece with both hands, the barrel upwards, the left thumb extended along the stock, the butt below the right forearm, the small of the stock against the body and two inches below the right breast, the muzzle as high as the eye, the left elbow against the side; place at the same time the right thumb on the head of the cock, the other fingers under and against the guard.

173. (*Third motion.*) Cock, and seize the piece at the small of the stock without deranging the position of the butt.

Aim.

One time and one motion.

174. Raise the piece with both hands, and support the butt against the right shoulder; the left elbow down, the right as high as the shoulder; incline the head upon the butt, so that the right eye may perceive quickly the notch of the hausse, the front sight, and the object aimed at; the left eye closed, the right thumb extended along the stock, the fore-finger on the trigger.

175. When recruits are formed in two ranks to execute the firings, the front rank men will raise a little less the right elbow, in order to facilitate the aim of the rear rank men.

176. The rear rank men, in aiming, will each carry the right foot about eight inches to the right, and towards the left heel of the man next on the right, inclining the upper part of the body forward.

Fire.

One time and one motion.

177. Press the fore-finger against the trigger, fire, without lowering or turning the head, and remain in this position.

Load.

One time and one motion.

179. Bring down the piece with both hands, at the same time face to the front and take the position of *load* as indicated No. 156. Each rear rank man will bring his right foot by the side of the left.

180. The men being in this position, the instructor will cause the loading to be continued by the commands and means prescribed No. 156 and following.

181. If, after firing, the instructor should not wish the recruits to re-load, he will command:

Shoulder—ARMS.

One time and one motion.

182. Throw up the piece briskly with the left hand and resume the position of *shoulder arms*, at the same time face to the front, turning on the left heel, and bring the right heel on a line with the left.

183. To accustom the recruits to wait for the command *fire*, the instructor, when they are in the position of *aim*, will command:

Recover—ARMS.

One time and one motion.

184. At the first part of the command, withdraw the finger from the trigger; at the command *arms*, retake the position of the third motion of *ready*.

185. The recruits being in the position of the third motion of *ready*, if the instructor should wish to bring them to a shoulder, he will command:

Shoulder—ARMS.

One time and one motion.

186. At the command *shoulder*, place the thumb upon the cock, the fore-finger on the trigger, half-cock, and seize the small of the stock with the right hand. At the command *arms*, bring up the piece briskly to the right shoulder, and retake the position of shoulder arms.

187. The recruits being at shoulder arms, when the instructor shall wish to fix bayonets, he shall command:

Fix—BAYONET.

One time and three motions.

188. (*First motion.*) Grasp the piece with the left hand at the height of the shoulder, and detach it slightly from the shoulder with the right hand.

189. (*Second motion.*) Quit the piece with the right hand, lower it with the left hand, opposite the middle of the body, and place the butt between the feet without shock; the rammer to the rear, the barrel vertical, the muzzle three inches from the body; seize it with the right hand at the upper band, and carry the left hand reversed to the handle of the sabre-bayonet.

190. (*Third motion.*) Draw the sabre-bayonet from the scabbard and fix it on the extremity of the barrel; seize the piece with the left hand, the arm extended, the right hand at the upper band.

Shoulder—ARMS.

One time and two motions.

191. (*First motion.*) Raise the piece with the left hand, and place it against the right shoulder, the rammer to the front; seize the piece at the same time with the right hand at the swell of the stock, the thumb and fore-finger embracing the guard, the right arm nearly extended.

192. (*Second motion.*) Drop briskly the left hand by the side.

Charge—BAYONET.

One time and two motions.

193. (*First motion.*) Raise the piece slightly with the right hand and make a half face to the right on the left heel; place the hollow of the right foot opposite to, and three inches from the left heel, the feet square; seize the piece at the same time with the left hand a little above the lower band.

194. (*Second motion.*) Bring down the piece with both hands, the barrel uppermost, the left elbow against the body; seize the small of the stock, at the same time, with the right hand, which will be supported against the hip; the point of the sabre-bayonet as high as the eye.

Shoulder—ARMS.

One time and two motions.

195. (*First motion.*) Throw up the piece briskly with the left hand in facing to the front, place it against the right shoulder, the rammer to the front; turn the right hand so as to embrace the guard; slide the left hand to the height of the shoulder, the right hand nearly extended.

196. (*Second motion.*) Drop the left hand smartly by the side.

Trail—ARMS.

One time and two motions.

197. (*First motion.*) The same as the first motion of *order arms.*

198. (*Second motion.*) Incline the muzzle slightly to the front, the butt to the rear and about four inches from the ground. The right hand supported at the hip, will so hold the piece that the rear rank men may not touch with their bayonets the men in the front rank.

Shoulder—ARMS.

199. At the command *shoulder*, raise the piece perpendicularly in the right hand, the little-finger in rear of the barrel; at the command *arms*, execute what has been prescribed for the *shoulder* from the position of *order arms.*

Unfix—BAYONET.

One time and three motions.

200. (*First and second motions.*) The same as the first and second motion of *fix bayonet*, except that, at the end of the second command, the thumb of the right hand will be placed on the spring of the sabre-bayonet, and the left hand will embrace the handle of the sabre-bayonet and the barrel, the thumb extended along the blade.

201. (*Third motion.*) Press the thumb of the right hand on the spring, wrest off the sabre-bayonet, turn it to the right, the edge to the front, lower the guard until it touches the right hand, which will seize the back and the edge of the blade between the thumb and first two fingers, the other fingers holding the piece; change the position of the hand without quitting the handle, return the sabre-bayonet to the scabbard, and seize the piece with the left hand, the arm extended.

Shoulder—ARMS.

One time and two motions.

202. (*First motion.*) The same as the first motion from *fix bayonet*, No. 191.

203. (*Second motion.*) The same as the second motion from *fix bayonet*, No. 192.

Secure—ARMS.

One time and three motions.

204. (*First motion.*) The same as the first motion of *support arms*, No. 133, except with the right hand seize the piece at the small of the stock.

205. (*Second motion.*) Turn the piece with both hands, the barrel to the front; bring it opposite the left shoulder, the butt against the hip, the left hand at

the lower band, the thumb as high as the chin and extended on the rammer; the piece erect and detached from the shoulder, the left fore-arm against the piece.

206. (*Third motion.*) Reverse the piece, pass it under the left arm, the left hand remaining at the lower band, the thumb on the rammer to prevent it from sliding out, the little finger resting against the hip, the right hand falling at the same time by the side.

Shoulder—ARMS.

One time and three motions.

207. (*First motion.*) Raise the piece with the left hand, and seize it with the right hand at the small of the stock. The piece erect and detached from the shoulder, the butt against the hip, the left fore-arm along the piece.

208. (*Second motion.*) The same as the second motion of *shoulder arms from a support.*

209. (*Third motion.*) The same as the third motion of *shoulder arms from a support.*

Right shoulder shift—ARMS.

One time and two motions.

210. (*First motion.*) Detach the piece perpendicularly from the shoulder with the right hand, and seize it with the left between the lower band and guide-sight, raise the piece, the left hand at the height of the shoulder, and four inches from it; place, at the same time, the right hand on the butt, the beak between the first two fingers, the other two fingers under the butt plate.

211. (*Second motion.*) Quit the piece with the left hand, raise and place the piece on the right shoulder with the right hand, the lock plate upwards; let fall at the same time, the left hand by the side.

Shoulder—ARMS.

One time and two motions.

212. (*First motion.*) Raise the piece perpendicularly by extending the right arm to its full length, the rammer to the front, at the same time seize the piece with the left hand between the lower band and guide sight.

213. (*Second motion.*) Quit the butt with the right hand, which will immediately embrace the guard, lower the piece to the position of shoulder arms, slide up the left hand to the height of the shoulder, the fingers extended and closed. Drop the left hand by the side.

214. The men being at support arms, the instructor will sometimes cause pieces to be brought to the right shoulder. To this effect, he will command:

Right shoulder shift—ARMS.

One time and two motions.

215. (*First motion.*) Seize the piece with the right hand, below and near the left fore-arm, place the left hand under the butt, the heel of the butt between the first two fingers.

216. (*Second motion.*) Turn the piece with the left hand, the lock plate upwards, carry it to the right shoulder, the left hand still holding the butt, the muzzle elevated; hold the piece in this position and place the right hand upon the butt as is prescribed No. 210, and let fall the left hand by the side.

Support—ARMS.

One time and two motions.

217. (*First motion.*) The same as the first motion of *shoulder arms*, No. 212.

218. (*Second motion.*) Turn the piece with both

hands, the barrel to the front, carry it opposite the left shoulder, slip the right hand to the small of the stock, place the left fore-arm extended on the breast as is prescribed No. 134, and let fall the right hand by the side.

Arms—AT WILL.

One time and one motion.

219. At this command, carry the piece at pleasure on either shoulder, with one or both hands, the muzzle elevated.

Shoulder—ARMS.

One time and one motion.

220. At this command, retake quickly the position of shoulder arms.

Inspection of Arms.

226. The recruits being at *ordered arms*, and having the sabre-bayonet in the scabbard, if the instructor wishes to cause an inspection of arms, he will command:

Inspection—ARMS.

One time and two motions.

227. (*First motion.*) Seize the piece with the left hand below and near the upper band, carry it with both hands opposite the middle of the body, the butt between the feet, the rammer to the rear, the barrel vertical, the muzzle about three inches from the body; carry the left hand reversed to the sabre-bayonet, draw it from the scabbard and fix it on the barrel; grasp the piece with the left hand below and near the upper band, seize the rammer with the thumb and

fore-finger of the right hand bent, the other fingers closed.

228. (*Second motion.*) Draw the rammer as has been explained in *loading*, and let it glide to the bottom of the bore, replace the piece with the left hand opposite the right shoulder, and retake the position of *ordered arms.*

229. The instructor will then inspect in succession the piece of each recruit, in passing along the front of the rank. Each, as the instructor reaches him, will raise smartly his piece with his right hand, seize it with the left between the lower band and guide sight, the lock to the front, the left hand at the height of the chin, the piece opposite to the left eye; the instructor will take it with the right hand at the handle, and, after inspecting it, will return it to the recruit, who will receive it back with the right hand, and replace it in the position of *ordered arms.*

230. When the instructor shall have passed him, each recruit will retake the position prescribed at the command *inspection arms*, return the rammer, and resume the position of *ordered arms.*

231. If, instead of *inspection of arms*, the instructor should merely wish to cause bayonets to be fixed, he will command:

Fix—BAYONET.

232. Take the position indicated No. 227, fix bayonets as has been explained, and immediately resume the position of *ordered arms.*

233. If it be the wish of the instructor, after firing, to ascertain whether the pieces have been discharged, he will command:

Spring—RAMMERS.

234. Put the rammer in the barrel as has been explained above, and immediately retake the position of *ordered arms.*

235. The instructor, for the purpose stated, can take the rammer by the small end, and spring it in the barrel, or cause each recruit to make it ring in the barrel.

236. Each recruit, after the instructor passes him, will return rammer, and resume the position of *ordered arms.*

To mark time.

240. The four men marching in the direct step, the instructor will command:

1. *Mark time.* 2. MARCH.

241. At the second command, which will be given at the instant a foot is coming to the ground, the recruits will make a semblance of marching, by bringing the heels by the side of each other, and observing the cadence of the step, by raising each foot alternately without advancing.

242. The instructor, wishing the direct step to be resumed, will command:

1. *Forward.* 2. MARCH.

243. At the second command, which will be given as prescribed above, the recruits will retake the step of twenty-eight inches.

To change step.

244. The squad being in march, the instructor will command:

1. *Change step.* 2. MARCH.

245. At the second command, which will be given at the instant either foot is coming to the ground, bring the foot which is in rear by the side of that which is in front, and step off again with the foot which was in front.

To march backwards.

246. The instructor, wishing the squad to march backwards, will command:

1. *Squad backward.* 2. MARCH.

247. At the second command, the recruits will step off smartly with the left foot fourteen inches to the rear, reckoning from heel to heel, and so on with the feet in succession till the command *halt*, which will always be preceded by the caution *squad*. The men will halt at this command, and bring back the foot in front by the side of the other.

248. This step will always be executed in quick time.

249. The instructor will be watchful that the recruits march straight to the rear, and that the erect position of the body and the piece be not deranged.

LESSON III.

To load in four times.

251. The first time will be executed at the end of the command; the three others at the commands, *two*, *three* and *four*.

The instructor will command:

1. *Load in four times.* 2. LOAD.

252. Execute the times to include charge cartridge.

TWO.

253. Execute the times to include ram cartridge.

THREE.

254. Execute the times to include prime.

FOUR.

255. Execute the time of *shoulder arms.*

To load at will.

256. The instructor will next teach loading at will, which will be executed as loading in four times, but continued, and without resting on either of the times. He will command:

1. *Load at will.* 2. LOAD.

257. The instructor will habituate the recruits, by degrees, to load with the greatest possible promptitude, each without regulating himself by his neighbor, and, above all, without waiting for him.

258. The cadence prescribed, No. 129, is not applicable to loading in four times, or at will.

LESSON IV.

Firings.

259. The firings are direct or oblique, and will be executed as follows:

The direct fire.

260. The instructor will give the following commands:

1. *Fire by squad.* 2. *Squad.* 3. READY. 4. AIM. 5. FIRE. 6. LOAD.

261. These several commands will be executed as has been prescribed in the *Manual of Arms.* At the third command, the men will come to the position of *ready* as heretofore explained. At the fourth, they will aim according to the rank in which each may find himself placed, the rear rank men inclining forward a

little the upper part of the body, in order that their pieces may reach as much beyond the front rank as possible.

262. At the sixth command, they will load their pieces, and return immediately to the position of *ready*.

263. The instructor will recommence the firing by the commands:

1. *Squad.* 2. AIM. 3. FIRE. 4. LOAD.

264. When the instructor wishes the firing to cease, he will command:

Cease firing.

265. At this command, the men will cease firing, but will load their pieces, if unloaded, and afterwards bring them to a shoulder.

Oblique firings.

266. The oblique firings will be executed to the right and left, and by the same commands as the direct fire, with this single difference—the command *aim* will always be preceded by the caution, *right* or *left oblique*.

Position of the two ranks in the Oblique Fire to the right.

267. At the command *ready*, the two ranks will execute what has been prescribed for the direct fire.

268. At the cautionary command *right oblique*, the two ranks will throw back the right shoulder and look steadily at the object to be hit.

269. At the command *aim*, each front rank man will aim to the right without deranging the feet; each rear rank man will advance the left foot about eight inches towards the right heel of the man next on the right of his file leader and aim to the right, inclining the upper

part of the body forward and bending a little the left knee.

Positions of the two ranks in the Oblique Fire to the left.

270. At the cautionary command *left oblique*, the two ranks will throw back the left shoulder, and look steadily at the object to be hit.

271. At the command *aim*, the front rank will take aim to the left without deranging the feet; each man in the rear rank will advance the right foot about eight inches towards the right heel of the next man on the right of his file leader, and aim to the left, inclining the upper part of the body forward and bending a little the right knee.

272. In both cases, at the command *load*, the men of each rank will come to the position of load as prescribed in the direct fire; the rear rank men bringing back the foot which is to the right and front by the side of the other. Each man will continue to load as if isolated.

To fire by file.

273. The fire by file will be executed by the two ranks, the files of which will fire successively, and without regulating on each other, except for the first fire.

274. The instructor will command:

1. *Fire by file.* 2. *Squad.* 3. READY. 4. COMMENCE FIRING.

275. At the third command, the two ranks will take the position prescribed in the direct fire.

276. At the fourth command, the file on the right will aim and fire; the rear rank man in aiming will take the position indicated, No. 176.

277. The men of this file will load their pieces

briskly and fire a second time; re-load and fire again, and so on in continuation.

278. The second file will aim at the instant the first brings down pieces to re-load, and will conform, in all respects, to that which has just been prescribed for the first file.

279. After the first fire, the front and rear rank men will not be required to fire at the same time.

280. Each man, after loading, will return to the position of ready and continue the fire.

281. When the instructor wishes the firing to cease, he will command:

Cease—FIRING.

282. At this command, the men will cease firing. If they have fired, they will load their pieces and bring them to a shoulder; if at the position of *ready*, they will half-cock and shoulder arms; if in the position of *aim*, they will bring down their pieces, half-cock, and shoulder arms.

To fire by rank.

283. The fire by rank will be executed by each entire rank, alternately.

284. The instructor will command:

1. *Fire by rank.* 2. *Squad.* 3. READY. 4. *Rear rank.* 5. AIM. 6. FIRE. 7. LOAD.

285. At the third command, the two ranks will take the position of *ready*, as prescribed in the direct fire.

286. At the seventh command, the rear rank will execute that which has been prescribed in the direct fire, and afterwards take the position of *ready*.

287. As soon as the instructor sees several men of

the rear rank in the position of ready, he will command:

1. *Front rank.* 2. Aim. 3. Fire. 4. Load.

288. At these commands, the men in the front rank will execute what has been prescribed for the rear rank, but they will not step off with the right foot.

289. The instructor will re-commence the firing by the rear rank, and will thus continue to alternate from rank to rank, until he shall wish the firing to cease, when he will command, *cease firing*, which will be executed as heretofore prescribed.

Lesson V.

To fire and load kneeling.

290. In this exercise the squad will be supposed loaded and drawn up in one rank. The instruction will be given to each man individually, without times or motions, and in the following manner.

291. The instructor will command:

Fire and Load kneeling.

292. At this command, the man on the right of the squad will move forward three paces and halt; then carry the right foot to the rear and to the right of the left heel, and in a position convenient for placing the right knee upon the ground in bending the left leg; place the right knee upon the ground; lower the piece, the left fore-arm supported upon the thigh on the same side, the right hand on the small of the stock, the butt resting on the right thigh, the left hand supporting the piece near the lower band.

293. He will next move the right leg to the left around the knee supported on the ground, until this leg is nearly perpendicular to the direction of the left

foot, and thus seat himself comfortably on the right heel.

294. Raise the piece with the right hand and support it with the left, holding it near the lower band, the left elbow resting on the left thigh near the knee; seize the hammer with the thumb, the forefinger under the guard, cock and seize the piece at the small of the stock; bring the piece to the shoulder, *aim* and *fire.*

295. Bring the piece down as soon as it is fired, and support it with the left hand, the butt resting against the right thigh; carry the piece to the rear, rising on the knee, the barrel downwards, the butt resting on the ground; in this position support the piece with the left hand at the upper band, draw cartridge with the right and load the piece, ramming the ball, if necessary, with both hands.

296. When loaded, bring the piece to the front with the left hand, which holds it at the upper band; seize it at the same time with the right hand at the small of the stock; turn the piece, the barrel uppermost and nearly horizontal, the left elbow resting on the left thigh; half-cock, remove the old cap and prime, rise, and return to the ranks.

297. The second man will then be taught what has just been prescribed for the first, and so on through the remainder of the squad.

To fire and load lying.

298. In this exercise the squad will be in one rank and loaded; the instruction will be given individually and without times or motions.

299. The instructor will command:

FIRE AND LOAD LYING.

300. At this command, the man on the right of the squad will move forward three paces and halt; he will then bring his piece to an order, drop on both knees,

and place himself on the ground flat on his belly. In this position he will support the piece nearly horizontal with the left hand, holding it near the lower band, the butt end of the piece and the left elbow resting on the ground, the barrel uppermost; cock the piece with the right hand, and carry this hand to the small of the stock; raise the piece with both hands, press the butt against the shoulder, and resting on both elbows, *aim* and *fire*.

301. As soon as he has fired, bring the piece down and turn upon his left side, still resting on his left elbow; bring back the piece until the cock is opposite his breast, the butt end resting on the ground; take out a cartridge with the right hand; seize the small of the stock with this hand, holding the cartridge with the thumb and two first fingers; he will then throw himself on his back, still holding the piece with both hands; carry the piece to the rear, place the butt between the heels, the barrel up, the muzzle elevated. In this position, charge cartridge, draw rammer, ram cartridge, and return rammer.

302. When finished loading, the man will turn again upon his left side, remove the old cap and prime, then raise the piece vertically, rise, turn about, and resume his position in the ranks.

303. The second man will be taught what has just been prescribed for the first, and so on throughout the squad.

Lesson VI.

Bayonet Exercise.

304. The bayonet exercise in this book will be confined to two movements, the *guard against infantry*, and the *guard against cavalry*. The men will be placed in one rank, with two paces interval, and being at shoulder arms, the instructor will command:

1. *Guard against Infantry.* 2. GUARD.

One time and two motions.

305. (*First motion.*) Make a half face to the right, turning on both heels, the feet square to each other; at the same time raise the piece slightly, and seize it with the left hand above and near the lower band.

306. (*Second motion.*) Carry the right foot twenty inches perpendicularly to the rear, the right heel on the prolongation of the left, the knees slightly bent, the weight of the body resting equally on both legs; lower the piece with both hands, the barrel uppermost, the left elbow against the body; seize the piece at the same time with the right hand at the small of the stock, the arms falling naturally, the point of the bayonet slightly elevated.

Shoulder—ARMS.

One time and one motion.

307. Throw up the piece with the left hand, and place it against the right shoulder, at the same time bring the right heel by the side of the left and face to the front.

1. *Guard against Cavalry.* 2. GUARD.

One time and two motions.

308. Both motions the same as for *guard against infantry*, except that the right hand will be supported against the hip, and the bayonet held at the height of the eye, as in *charge bayonet.*

Shoulder—ARMS.

One time and one motion.

309. Spring up the piece with the left hand and place it against the right shoulder, at the same time bring the right heel by the side of the left, and face to the front.

MANUAL OF ARMS FOR THE MUSKET.*

Principles of Shouldered Arms.

94. Each soldier being in the position of the soldier, the instructor will cause him to turn up the left hand without bending the wrist, the left fore-arm only acting. The instructor will raise the piece perpendicularly, and place it as follows:

The piece in the left hand, the arm very slightly bent, the elbow back near the body, the palm of the hand pressing on the outer flat of the butt; the outer edge of the latter on the upper joints of the fingers, the heel of the butt between the middle and fore-fingers, the thumb on the front screw of the butt plate, the remaining fingers under the butt, the butt more or less kept back according to the conformation of the man, so that the piece, seen from the front, shall appear perpendicular, and also, that the movement of the thigh, in marching, may not raise it or cause it to waver; the stock below the tail band, resting against the hollow of the shoulder, just within the joint, the right arm hanging naturally as prescribed in the position of the soldier.

The manual of the musket will be taught in the following order. The instructor commands:

Support—ARMS.

One time and three motions.

95. (*First motion.*) With the right hand seize the small of the stock briskly, 4 inches below the lock, raising the piece a little, but not turning it.

(*Second motion.*) Take the left hand from the butt; extend the left fore-arm upward across the body, and

*The numbers of these paragraphs are retained with them, from Gilham's Manual.

under the hammer, the left hand flat on the right breast.

(*Third motion.*) Drop the right arm smartly to its position. The squad being at support arms, the instructor commands:

Carry—ARMS.

One time and three motions.

96. *First motion.* Carry quickly the right hand to the small of the stock.

Second motion. Place the left hand under the butt, as in the position of shoulder arms.

Third motion. Let fall smartly the right hand to its position, and drop with the left, at the same time, the piece into the position of shoulder arms.

Present—ARMS.

One time and two motions.

97. *First motion.* Turn the piece with the left hand, the lock out, and seize the small of the stock, at the same time, with the right hand, the piece perpendicular and detached from the shoulder, the left hand remaining under the butt.

(*Second motion.*) Complete the turning inwards of the piece, so as to bring it erect before the centre of the body, the rammer to the front, the right hand under and against the guard; seize it smartly at the same time with the left hand just above the lock, the thumb extended along the barrel and on the stock, the left fore-arm resting on the body without constraint, and the hand at the height of the elbow.

Shoulder—ARMS.

One time and two motions.

98. (*First motion.*) Turn the piece with the right hand, the barrel to the front, raise and support it against the left shoulder with the right hand, drop the

left under the butt, the right hand resting on, without grasping, the small of the stock.

(*Second motion.*) Drop quickly the right hand into its position.

Order—ARMS.

One time and two motions.

99. (*First motion.*) Drop the piece smartly by extending the left arm, seize it at the same time with the right hand, above and near the tail-band; quit the hold of the left hand, and carry the piece opposite to the right shoulder, the rammer to the front, the little finger behind the barrel, the right hand supported against the hip, the butt three inches from the ground, the piece erect, the left hand hanging by the side.

(*Second motion.*) Let the piece slip through the right hand to the ground without shock, and take the position about to be described.

Position of Order Arms.

100. The hand low, the barrel between the thumb and fore-finger extended along the stock; the other fingers extended and joined; the muzzle about two inches from the right shoulder; the rammer in front; the toe of the butt against, and in line with, the toe of the right foot, the barrel perpendicular.

101. When the instructor wishes to give repose in this position, he commands:

REST.

102. At this command the soldier will not be required to preserve silence or steadiness. They, however, will not quit their rank without special permission. When the instructor wishes the men to pass from this position to that of silence and steadiness, he commands:

1. *Attention.* 2. SQUAD.

At the second word the men will resume the position of order arms, and remain firm and silent.

Shoulder—ARMS.

One time and two motions.

103. (*First motion.*) Raise smartly the piece with the right hand, carry it against the left shoulder, turning it so as to bring the barrel to the front; at the same time place the left hand under the butt and slip the right hand down to the lock.

(*Second motion.*) Let the right hand fall briskly to its position.

Charge—BAYONET.

One time and two motions.

104. (*First motion.*) Make a half face to the right on the left heel, bring the left toe directly to the front, at the same time place the right foot behind, and at right angles with the left, the hollow of the right foot opposite to, and about three inches from the left heel; turn the piece with the left hand, the lock outwards, and seize the small of the stock at the same time with the right hand, the musket perpendicular, and detached from the shoulder, the left hand under the butt.

(*Second motion.*) Bring down the piece with the right hand, letting it fall firmly into the left, the latter seizing it a little in advance of the tail band, the barrel up, the left elbow near the body, the right hand against the hip, the point of the bayonet as high as the eye.

Shoulder—ARMS.

One time and two motions.

105. (*First motion.*) Face to the front by turning on the left heel, bring up the right by the side of the left

heel; at the same time bring up the piece with the right hand to the left shoulder, and place the left hand under the butt.

(*Second motion.*) Let the right hand fall promptly into its position.

Load in ten times.

1. LOAD.

One time and two motions.

106. (*First motion.*) Drop the piece by a smart extension of the left arm, seize it with the right hand above and near the lower band; at the same time carry the right foot forward, the heel against the hollow of the left foot.

(*Second motion.*) Drop the piece with the right hand along the left thigh, seize it with the left hand above the right, and with the left hand let it descend to the ground, without shock, the piece touching the left thigh, and the muzzle opposite the centre of the body; carry the right hand quickly to the cartridge box and open it.

2. *Handle*—CARTRIDGE.

One time and one motion.

107. Seize a cartridge with the thumb and the next two fingers, and place it between the teeth.

3. *Tear*—CARTRIDGE.

One time and one motion.

108. Tear the paper down to the powder, hold the cartridge upright between the thumb and two next fingers, near the top; in this position place it in front of and near the muzzle, the back of the hand to the front.

4. *Charge*—Cartridge.

109. Fix the eye on the muzzle, turn quickly the back of the right hand towards the body, in order to discharge the powder into the barrel, raise the elbow to the height of the wrist, shake the cartridge, force it into the muzzle and leave the hand reversed, the fingers closed, but not clenched.

5. *Draw*—Rammer.

One time and three motions.

110. (*First motion.*) Drop the right elbow smartly, and seize the rammer between the thumb and fore-finger bent, the other fingers shut; draw it smartly, extending the arm, seize the rammer again at the middle, between the thumb and fore-finger, the hand reversed, the palm to the front, the nails up, the eyes following the movement of the hand, clear the rammer from the pipes by again extending the arm.

(*Second motion.*) Turn rapidly the rammer between the bayonet and the face, closing the fingers, the rammers of the rear rank grazing the right shoulders of the men of the same file in front, the rammer parallel to the bayonet, the arm extended, the butt of the rammer opposite to the muzzle, but not yet inserted, the eyes fixed on the muzzle.

(*Third motion.*) Insert the butt of the rammer, and force it down as low as the hand.

6. *Ram*—Cartridge.

One time and one motion.

111. Extend the arm to its full length to seize the rammer between the right thumb extended and the fore-finger bent, the other fingers closed; with force ram home twice and seize the rammer at the small end between the thumb and fore-finger bent, the other fingers closed, the right elbow touching the body.

7. *Return*—Rammer.

One time and three motions.

112. (*First motion.*) Draw the rammer briskly, reseize it at the middle between the thumb and forefinger, the hand reversed, the palm to the front, the nails up, the eyes following the hand, clear the rammer from the barrel by extending the arm.

(*Second motion.*) Turn the rammer rapidly between the bayonet and the face, closing the fingers, the rammers of the rear rank grazing the right shoulders of the men of the same file in front, the rammer parallel to the bayonet, the arm extended, the little end of the rammer opposite to the first pipe, but not yet inserted, the eyes fixed on that pipe.

(*Third motion.*) Insert the small end, and with the thumb, which will follow the movement, force it as low as the middle band; raise the hand quickly, a little bent, place the little-finger on the butt of the rammer, and force it down; lower the left hand on the barrel to the extent of the arm, without depressing the shoulder.

8. *Cast*—About.

One time and two motions.

113. (*First motion.*) With the left hand bring up the piece vertically against the left shoulder, seize it smartly with the right hand at the small of the stock, and slide the left hand down as low as the chin.

(*Second motion.*) Make a half face to the right on the left heel, bring the left toe to the front, place the right foot at the same time close behind and at right angles with the left, the hollow of the right foot against the left heel; carry the piece opposite to the right shoulder; bring down the piece with the right hand into the left, which will seize it at the tail-band, the thumb extended on the stock, the butt under the

right fore-arm, the small of the stock against the body, and about two inches under the right breast, the muzzle at the height of the eye, the left elbow supported against the side, the right hand grasping the small of the stock.

9. PRIME.

One time and one motion.

114. Place the thumb of the right hand on the hammer (the fingers remaining under and against the guard) and half-cock the piece; brush off the old cap, and with the thumb and first two fingers of the right hand take the cap from the pouch, place it firmly on the cone by pushing it down with the thumb, and seize the piece by the small of the stock.

10. *Shoulder*—ARMS.

One time and two motions.

115. (*First motion.*) Face to the front by turning on the left heel; at the same time bring the piece briskly with the right hand to the left shoulder, and place the left hand under the butt.

(*Second motion.*) Let the right hand fall smartly into its position at shoulder arms.

READY—(From the position of *prime.*)

One time and one motion.

116. Place the thumb of the right hand on the hammer (the fingers remaining under and against the guard), cock the piece, and seize the small of the stock.

READY—(From the position of *shoulder arms.*)

One time and four motions.

117. (*First motion.*) Turn the piece with the left hand, the lock to the front, seize it at the small of the

stock with the right hand; at the same time make a half face to the right on the left heel, bringing the left toe to the front, and placing the right foot behind, and at right angles to the left, the hollow of the foot against the left heel.

(*Second motion.*) Bring the piece with the right hand to the middle of the body, place the left hand just above the lock, the thumb extended along the stock at the height of the chin, the counter (or S) plate turned towards the body, the rammer obliquely to the left and front.

(*Third motion.*) Place the thumb on the hammer, the fore-finger under and on the guard, the other three fingers joined to the first, the elbow at the height of the hand.

(*Fourth motion.*) Close the right elbow smartly to the body in cocking, without bending the wrist, seize the piece by the small of the stock, let it descend along the body in the left hand to the tail-band, which will remain at the height of the shoulder.

AIM.

118. (As in the manual for the Rifle.)

FIRE.

119. (As in the manual for the Rifle.)

LOAD—(From the *Fire.*)

One time and two motions.

120. (*First motion.*) Bring back the piece quickly with both hands, depress the butt strongly by extending the right arm, and carry it with the arm thus extended, to the left side, the barrel to the front and opposite to the left shoulder, the left hand at the height of the chin, the back of the hand to the front, the left

fore-arm touching the stock; at the same time face to the front and carry the right foot forward, the heel against the hollow of the left foot.

(*Second motion.*) Let go the handle with the right hand, let the piece descend through the left to the ground, without shock, and take the position of the second motion of load.

Shoulder—ARMS. (From the *fire.*)

One time and two motions.

121. (*First motion.*) Bring back the piece with both hands, face to the front, carry the piece against the left shoulder, and place the left hand under the butt.

(*Second motion.*) Let the right hand fall smartly to its position. The squad being in position of aim, the instructor, to habituate the soldiers to wait for the word fire, sometimes commands:

Recover—ARMS.

122. (As in manual for Rifle.) The men being in the position of the fourth motion of ready, if the instructor wishes them to come to a shoulder, he commands:

Shoulder—ARMS.

123. At the word shoulder, the squad will face to the front, and bring their pieces to the middle of the body again; the left thumb at the height of the chin, the little finger just above the lock; next place the right thumb on the head of the hammer, support the fore-finger on the trigger, sustain the hammer carefully in its descent at the same time, to the position of half-cock, then seize the small of the stock with the right hand. At the word arms, carry the piece to the shoulder smartly, and take the position of shoulder arms.

To load in four times—(or *pauses.*)

124. The instructor commands:

1. *Load in four times.* 2. LOAD.

Execute the first time of loading, handle cartridge, tear cartridge, charge cartridge.

TWO.

125. Draw rammer, enter it as far as the hand and ram twice.

THREE.

126. Return rammer, cast about, and prime.

FOUR.

127. Execute the tenth time of loading.

128. The soldiers being at a shoulder, when the instructor may wish to return bayonets, he commands:

Unfix—BAYONETS.

One time and three motions.

(*First motion.*) Drop the piece by a smart extension of the left arm, seize it with the right hand above and near the tail-band.

(*Second motion.*) Drop the piece with the right hand along the left thigh, seize it with the left hand above the right, lengthen out the left arm, rest the butt on the ground, without shock, and carry the right hand at the same time to the bayonet, with the thumb lower the clasp against the stop, and then seize the bayonet at the socket and shank.

(*Third motion.*) Wrest off the bayonet, return it to the scabbard, place the little finger on the butt of the rammer, lower the left hand along the barrel in extending the arm, without depressing the shoulder.

Shoulder—ARMS.

One time and three motions.

129. (*First motion.*) Raise the piece with the left hand along the left side, the hand at the height of the chin, the fore-arm touching the piece, the barrel to the front; drop at the same time the right hand to seize the piece a little above the handle, the fore-finger touching the cock, and the thumb on the counter-plate.

(*Second motion.*) Raise the piece with the right hand, drop the left, and place it under the butt, bring back the right heel to the side of the left, and on the same line; support the piece with the right hand against the shoulder, in the position prescribed for shoulder arms, the right hand resting on, without grasping the piece.

(*Third motion.*) Let fall smartly the right hand into its position by the side of the thigh.

Fix—BAYONET.

130. (*First and second motions.*) As the first and second motions of unfix bayonet, except that at the end of the second motion, the right hand will go to seize bayonet by the socket and shank, so that the lower (now upper) end of the socket shall extend about an inch above the heel of the palm.

(*Third motion.*) Draw the bayonet from the scabbard, carry and fix it on the muzzle, turning the clasp towards the body with the right thumb; place the little finger on the head of the rammer, lower the left hand along the barrel, in extending the arm.

Shoulder—ARMS.

The same as from the unfix bayonet.

Secure—ARMS.

One time and two motions.

131. (*First motion.*) Seize quickly the piece with the right hand, the thumb on the counter plate, and the fore-finger against the cock; detach the piece from the shoulder at the same instant, the barrel to the front, seize it at the tail-band with the left hand, the thumb extended on the rammer, the piece erect, opposite to the shoulder, the left elbow on the piece.

(*Second motion.*) Reverse the piece, pass it under the left arm, the left hand remaining at the tail-band, the thumb on the rammer to prevent it from sliding out, the little finger resting against the hip, and the right hand falling at the same time into its position.

Shoulder—ARMS.

One time and two motions.

132. (*First motion.*) Raise the piece with the left hand, but not too suddenly, lest the rammer should fly out; seize the handle with the right hand to support it against the shoulder, quit the hold of the left hand, and place quickly this hand under the butt.

(*Second motion.*) Let fall smartly the right hand into its position; drop at the same time the piece into the position of shouldered arms.

Trail—ARMS.

One time and two motions.

133. (*First motion.*) As the first motion of order arms.

(*Second motion.*) Incline a little the muzzle to the front, the butt to the rear, and about three inches from the ground; the right hand supported at the hip, will sustain the piece so that the men of the rear rank may not touch with their bayonets the men in front of them.

Shoulder—ARMS.

134. At the command shoulder, raise the piece perpendicularly in the right hand; at the command arms, execute what has been prescribed for the shoulder from the position of order arms.

To right shoulder, shift—ARMS.

One time and one motion.

135. Turn the piece with the left hand, the lock to the front, seize it at the same time with the right hand at the handle, place it on the right shoulder, the left hand not quitting the butt, the lock plate upwards, the muzzle up; sustain the piece in this position by placing the right hand on the flat of the butt; let fall the left hand by the side.

Shoulder—ARMS.

136. Raise the piece by extending the right arm, seize it with the left hand above the lock, carry it against the left shoulder, turning the barrel to the front, the right hand being at the handle, place the left hand under the butt, and let the right fall into its position.

Arms—AT WILL.

One time and one motion.

137. Carry the piece at pleasure on either shoulder, or with one or both hands, the muzzle always up.

Shoulder—ARMS.

138. Retake smartly the position of shoulder arms.

Inspection of Arms.

139. The squad being at ordered arms, and having the bayonet in the scabbard, if the instructor wishes to cause an inspection of arms, he will command:

Inspection of—ARMS.

One time and three motions.

(*First motion.*) Face to the right once and a half on the left heel, carrying the right foot perpendicularly to the rear of the alignment, about six inches from, and at right angles with, the left foot, seize promptly the piece with the left hand a little above the the middle band, incline the muzzle to the rear without displacing the heel of the butt, the rammer turned towards the body; carry at the same time the right hand to the bayonet, and seize it as has been prescribed, No. 130.

(*Second motion.*) Draw the bayonet from the scabbard, carry and fix it on the muzzle; seize next the rammer, draw it as has been explained in loading in ten times, and let it glide to the bottom of the bore.

(*Third motion.*) Face promptly to the front, seize the piece with the right hand, and retake the position of ordered arms.

The instructor will then inspect in succession the piece of each man, in passing along the front of the rank. Each, as the instructor reaches him, will raise smartly his piece with his right hand, seize it with the left between the tail-band and the feather-spring [or guide sight], the lock to the front, the left hand at the height of the chin, the piece opposite to the left eye. The instructor will take it with the right hand at the handle, and after inspecting it, will return it to the soldier, who will receive it back with the right hand and replace it in the position of ordered arms.

When the instructor shall have passed him, each soldier will retake the position prescribed at the command inspection of arms, and return the rammer; after which he will face to the front.

140. If, instead of inspection of arms, it be the wish of the instructor only to cause bayonet to be fixed, he will command:

Fix—BAYONET.

Take the position indicated, No. 139, (first motion), fix bayonets as has been explained, and immediately face to the front.

Bayonets fixed, if it be the wish of the instructor, after firing, to ascertain whether the pieces have been discharged, he will command:

Spring—RAMMERS.

As in manual for the rifle.

The instructor, for the purpose stated, can take the rammer by the small end, and spring it in the barrel, or cause each man to make the rammer ring in the barrel.

Each man, after the instructor passes him, will return rammer, and face to the front.

Arms—PORT.

One time and one motion.

141. Throw the piece diagonally across the body, the lock to the front, seize it smartly at the same instant with both hands, the right at the handle, the left at the tail-band, the two thumbs pointing towards the muzzle, the barrel sloping upwards and crossing opposite to the point of the left shoulder, the butt proportionally lowered. The palm of the right hand will be above, and that of the left under the piece, the nails of of both hands next to the body, to which the elbows will be closed.

Shoulder—ARMS.

One time and two motions.

(*First motion.*) Bring the piece smartly to the left shoulder, placing the left hand under the butt.

(*Second motion.*) Drop the right hand smartly by the side.

PART THIRD.

310. When the recruits are well established in the *principles and mechanism of the step, the position of the body*, and *manual of arms*, the instructor will unite eight men, at least, and twelve men, at most, in order to teach them the principles of alignment, the principles of the touch of elbows in marching to the front, the principles of the march by the flank, wheeling from a halt, wheeling in marching, and the change of direction to the side of the guide. He will place the squad in one rank elbow to elbow, and number the men from right to left.

LESSON I.

Alignments.

311. The instructor will at first teach the recruits to align themselves man by man, in order the better to make them comprehend the principles of alignment; to this end, he will command the two men on the right flank to march two paces to the front, and having aligned them, he will caution the remainder of the squad to move up, as they may be successively called, each by his number, and align themselves successively on the line of the first two men.

312. Each recruit, as designated by his number, will turn the head and eyes to the right as prescribed

in the first lesson of the first part, and will march in *quick time two paces forward*, shortening the last, so as to find himself about six inches behind the new alignment, which he ought never to pass: he will next move up steadily by steps of two or three inches, the hams extended, to the side of the man next to him on the alignment, so that, without deranging the head, the line of the eyes, or that of the shoulders, he may find himself in the exact line of his neighbor, whose elbow he will lightly touch without opening his own.

313. The instructor seeing the rank well aligned, will command:

FRONT.

314. At this, the recruits will turn eyes to the front, and remain firm.

315. Alignments to the left will be executed on the same principles.

316. When the recruits shall have thus learned to align themselves man by man, correctly, and without groping or jostling, the instructor will cause the entire rank to align itself at once by the command:

Right (or *left*)—DRESS.

317. At this, the rank, except the two men placed in advance as a basis of alignment, will move up in *quick time*, and place themselves on the new line, according to the principles prescribed No. 312.

318. The instructor, placed five or six paces in front, and facing the rank, will carefully observe that the principles are followed, and then pass to the flank that has served as the basis, to verify the alignment.

319. The instructor seeing the greater number of the rank aligned, will command:

FRONT.

320. The instructor may afterwards order *this* or

that file *forward* or *back*, designating each by its number. The file or files designated, only, will slightly turn the head towards the basis, to judge how much they ought to move up or back, steadily place themselves on the line, and then turn eyes to the front, without a particular command to that effect.

321. Alignments to the rear will be executed on the same principles, the recruits stepping back a little beyond the line, and then dressing up according to the principles prescribed No. 312, the instructor commanding:

Right (or *left*) *backward*—DRESS.

322. After each alignment, the instructor will examine the position of the men, and cause the rank to come to *ordered arms*, to prevent too much fatigue, and also the danger of negligence at *shouldered arms*.

LESSON II.

323. The men having learned, in the first and second parts, to march with steadiness in common time, and to take steps equal in length and swiftness, will be exercised in the third part only in *quick time*, *double quick time*, and the *run;* the instructor will cause them to execute successively, at these different gaits, the march to the front, the facing about in marching, the march by the flank, the wheels at a halt and in marching, and the changes of direction to the side of the guide.

324. The instructor will inform the recruits that at the command *march*, they will always move off in *quick time*, unless this command should be preceded by that of *double quick*.

To march to the front.

325. The rank being correctly aligned, when the instructor shall wish to cause it to march by the front,

he will place a well instructed man on the right or the left, according to the side on which he may wish the guide to be, and command:

1. *Squad forward.* 2. *Guide right* (or *left*).
3. MARCH.

326. At the command *march*, the rank will step off smartly with the left foot; the guide will take care to march straight to the front, keeping his shoulders always in a square with that line.

327. The instructor will observe, in marching to the front, that the men touch lightly the elbow towards the side of the guide; that they do not open out the left elbow, nor the right arm; that they yield to pressure coming from the side of the guide, and resist that coming from the opposite side; that they recover by insensible degrees the slight touch of the elbow, if lost; that they maintain the head direct to the front, no matter on which side the guide may be; and if found before or behind the alignment, that the man in fault corrects himself by shortening or lengthening the step, by degrees, almost insensible.

330. The men being well established in the principles of the direct march, the instructor will exercise them in marching obliquely. The rank being in march, the instructor will command:

1. *Right* (or *left*) *oblique.* 2. MARCH.

331. At the second command, each man will make a half face to the right or left and will then march straight forward in the new direction. As the men no longer touch elbows, they will glance along the shoulders of the nearest files, towards the side to which they are obliquing, and will regulate their steps so that the shoulders shall always be behind that of their next neighbor on that side, and that his head shall conceal the heads of the other men in the rank.

Besides this, the men should preserve the same length of pace, and the same degree of obliquity.

332. The instructor wishing to resume the primitive direction, will command:

1. *Forward.* 2. MARCH.

333. At the second command, each man will make a half face to the left (or right), and all will then march straight to the front, conforming to the principles of the direct march.

To march to the front in double quick time.

334. When the several principles, heretofore explained, have become familiar to the recruits, and they shall be well established in the position of the body, the bearing of arms, and the mechanism, length and swiftness of the step, the instructor will pass them from *quick* to *double quick* time, and the reverse, observing not to make them march obliquely in double quick time, till they are well established in the cadence of this step.

335. The squad being at a march in quick time, the instructor will command:

1. *Double quick.* 2. MARCH.

336. At the command *march*, which will be given when either foot is coming to the ground, the squad will step off in double quick time. The men will endeavor to follow the principles laid down in the first part of this book, and to preserve the alignment.

337. When the instructor wishes the squad to resume the step in quick time, he will command:

1. *Quick time.* 2. MARCH.

338. At the command *march*, which will be given when either foot is coming to the ground, the squad will retake the step in quick time.

339. The squad being in march, the instructor will halt it by the commands and means prescribed Nos. 98 and 99. The command *halt* will be given an instant before the foot is ready to be placed on the ground.

340. The squad being in march in double quick time, the instructor will occasionally cause it to mark time by the commands prescribed No. 240. The men will then mark double quick time, without altering the cadence of the step. He will also cause them to pass from the direct to the oblique step, and reciprocally, conforming to what has been prescribed No. 330, and following.

341. The squad being at a halt, the instructor will cause it to march in double quick time, by preceding the command *march*, by *double quick*.

342. The instructor will endeavor to regulate well the cadence of this step.

To face about in marching.

343. If the squad be marching in quick, or double quick time, and the instructor should wish to march it in retreat, he will command:

1. *Squad, right about.* 2. MARCH.

344. At the command *march*, which will be given at the instant the left foot is coming to the ground, the recruit will bring this foot to the ground, and turning on it will face to the rear; he will then place the right foot in the new direction, and step off with the left foot.

To march backwards.

345. The squad being at a halt, if the instructor should wish to march it in the back step, he will command:

1. *Squad backward.* 2. *Guide left* (or *right.*) 3. MARCH.

346. The back step will be executed by the means prescribed No. 247.

347. The instructor, in this step, will be watchful that the men do not lean on each other.

348. As the march to the front in quick time should only be executed at shouldered arms, the instructor in order not to fatigue the men too much, and also to prevent negligence in gait and position, will halt the squad from time to time, and cause arms to be ordered.

349. In marching at *double quick time*, the men will always carry their pieces on the *right shoulder*, or at a *trail. This rule is general.*

350. If the instructor shall wish the pieces carried at a trail, he will give the command *trail arms*, before the command *double quick.* If, on the contrary, this command be not given, the men will shift their pieces to the right shoulder at the command *double quick.* In either case, at the command *halt*, the men will bring their pieces to the position of *shoulder arms. This rule is general.*

LESSON III.

The march by the flank.

351. The rank being at a halt, and correctly aligned, the instructor will command:

1. *Squad, right*—FACE. 2. *Forward.* 3. MARCH.

352. At the last part of the first command, the rank will face to the right; the even numbered men, after facing to the right, will step quickly to the right side of the odd numbered men, the latter standing fast, so that when the movement is executed, the men will be formed into files of two men abreast.

353. At the third command, the squad will step off smartly with the left foot; the files keeping aligned, and preserving their intervals.

354. The march by the left flank will be executed by the same commands, substituting the word *left*, for *right*, and by inverse means; in this case, the even numbered men, after facing to the left, will stand fast and the odd numbered will place themselves on their left.

355. The instructor will place a well instructed soldier by the side of the recruit who is at the head of the rank, to regulate the step, and to conduct him; and it will be enjoined on this recruit to march always elbow to elbow with the soldier.

358. When he shall wish to halt the rank, marching by the flank, and to cause it to face to the front, he will command:

1. *Squad.* 2. HALT. 3. FRONT.

359. At the second command, the rank will halt, and afterwards no man will stir, although he may have lost his distance. This prohibition is necessary, to habituate the men to a constant preservation of their distances.

360. At the third command, each man will front by facing to the left, if marching by the right flank, and by a face to the right, if marching by the left flank. The rear rank men will at the same time move quickly into their places, so as to form the squad again into one rank.

361. When the men have become accustomed to marching by the flank, the instructor will cause them to change direction by file; for this purpose, he will command:

1. *By file left* (or *right*). 2. MARCH.

362. At the command *march*, the first file will change

direction to the left [or right] in describing a small arc of a circle, and will then march straight forward; the two men of this file, in wheeling, will keep up the touch of the elbows, and the man on the side to which the wheel is made, will shorten the first three or four steps. Each file will come successively to wheel on the same spot where that which preceded it wheeled.

363. The instructor will also cause the squad to face by the right or left flank in marching, and for this purpose will command:

1. *Squad by the right* (or *left*) *flank.* 2. MARCH.

364. At the second command, which will be given a little before either foot comes to the ground, the recruits will turn the body, plant the foot that is raised in the new direction, and step off with the other foot without altering the cadence of the step; the men will double or undouble rapidly.

365. If, in facing by the right or the left flank, the squad should face to the rear, the men will come into one rank, agreeably to the principles indicated No. 360. It is to be remarked it is the men who are in rear who always move up to form into single rank, and in such manner as never to invert the order of the numbers in the rank.

366. If, when the squad has been faced to the rear, the instructor should cause it to face by the left flank, it is the even numbers who will double by moving to the left of the odd numbers; but if by the right flank, it is the odd numbers who will double to the right of the even numbers.

367. This lesson, like the preceding one, will be practiced with pieces at a shoulder; but the instructor may, to give relief by change, occasionally order *support arms*, and he will require of the recruits marching in this position, as much regularity as in the former.

The march by the flank in double quick time.

368. The principles of the march by the flank in double quick time, are the same as in quick time. The instructor will give the commands prescribed No. 351, taking care always to give the command *double quick* before that of *march.*

369. He will pay the greatest attention to the cadence of the step.

370. The instructor will cause the change of direction, and the march by the flank, to be executed in double quick time, by the same commands, and according to the same principles, as in quick time.

371. The instructor will cause the pieces to be carried either on the *right shoulder* or at a *trail.*

372. The instructor will sometimes march the squad by the flank, without doubling the files.

373. The principles of this march are the same as in two ranks, and it will always be executed in quick time.

374. The instructor will give the commands prescribed No. 351, but he will be careful to caution the squad not to double files.

375. The instructor will be watchful that the men do not bend their knees unequally, which would cause them to tread on the heels of the men in front, and also to lose the cadence of the step and their distances.

376. The various movements in this lesson will be executed in single rank. In the changes of direction, the leading man will change direction without altering the length or the cadence of the step. The instructor will recall to the attention of the men, that in facing by the right or left flank in marching, they will not double, but march in one rank.

Lesson IV.

WHEELINGS.

General principles of wheeling.

377. Wheelings are of two kinds: from halts, or on fixed pivots, and in march, or on moveable pivots.

378. Wheeling on a fixed pivot takes place in passing a corps from the order in battle to the order in column, or from the latter to the former.

379. Wheels in marching take place in changes of direction in column, as often as this movement is executed to the side opposite the guide.

380. In wheels from a halt, the pivot-man only turns in his place, without advancing or receding.

381. In the wheels in marching, the pivot takes steps of nine or eleven inches, according as the squad is marching in quick or double quick time, so as to clear the wheeling point, which is necessary, in order that the subdivisions of a column may change direction without losing their distances, as will be explained in the school of the company.

382. The man on the wheeling flank will take the full step of twenty-eight inches, or thirty-three inches, according to the gait.

Wheeling from a halt, or on a fixed pivot.

383. The rank being at a halt, the instructor will place a well-instructed man on the wheeling flank to conduct it, and then command:

1. *By squad, right wheel.* 2. MARCH.

384. At the second command, the rank will step off with the left foot, turning at the same time the head a little to the left, the eyes fixed on the line of the eyes

of the men to their left; the pivot-man will merely mark time in gradually turning his body, in order to conform himself to the movement of the marching flank; the man who conducts this flank will take steps of twenty-eight inches, and from the first step advance a little the left shoulder, cast his eyes from time to time along the rank, and feel constantly the elbow of the next man lightly, but never push him.

385. The other men will feel lightly the elbow of the next man towards the pivot, resist pressure coming from the opposite side, and each will conform himself to the marching flank—shortening his step according to his approximation to the pivot.

386. The instructor will make the rank wheel round the circle once or twice before halting, in order to cause the principles to be the better understood, and he will be watchful that the centre does not break.

387. He will cause the wheel to the left to be executed according to the same principles.

388. When the instructor shall wish to arrest the wheel, he will command:

1. *Squad.* 2. HALT.

389. At the second command, the rank will halt, and no man stir. The instructor, going to the flank opposite the pivot, will place the two outer men of that flank in the direction he may wish to give to the rank, without, however, displacing the pivot, who will conform the line of his shoulders to this direction. The instructor will take care to have between these two men, and the pivot, only the space necessary to contain the other men. He will then command:

Left (or *right*)—DRESS.

390. At this the rank will place itself on the alignment of the two men established as the basis, in conformity with the principles prescribed.

391. The instructor will next command FRONT, which will be executed as prescribed No. 314.

Wheeling in marching, or on a moveable pivot.

393. When the recruits have been brought to execute well the wheel from a halt, they will be taught to wheel in marching.

394. To this end, the rank being in march, when the instructor shall wish to cause it to change direction to the reverse flank, (to the side opposite to the guide or pivot flank,) he will command:

1. *Right* (or *left*) *wheel.* 2. MARCH.

395. The first command will be given when the rank is yet *four* paces from the wheeling point.

396. At the second command, the wheel will be executed in the same manner as from a halt, except that the touch of the elbow will remain towards the marching flank (or side of the guide) instead of the side of the actual pivot; that the pivot man, instead of merely turning in his place, will conform himself to the movement of the marching flank, feel lightly the elbow of the next man, take steps of full nine inches, and thus gain ground forward in describing a small curve so as to clear the point of the wheel. The middle of the rank will bend slightly to the rear. As soon as the movement shall commence, the man who conducts the marching flank will cast his eyes on the ground over which he will have to pass.

397. The wheel being ended, the instructor will command:

1. *Forward.* 2. MARCH.

398. The first command will be pronounced when *four* paces are yet required to complete the change of direction.

399. At the command *march*, which will be given at the instant of completing the wheel, the man who conducts the marching flank will direct himself straight forward; the pivot man and all the rank will retake the step of twenty-eight inches, and bring the head direct to the front.

Turning, or change of direction to the side of the guide.

400. The change of direction to the side of the guide, in marching, will be executed as follows: The instructor will command:

1. *Left* (or *right*) *turn.* 2. MARCH.

401. The first command will be given when the rank is yet *four* paces from the turning point.

402. At the command *march*, to be pronounced at the instant the rank ought to turn, the guide will face to the left (or right) in marching, and move forward in the new direction without slackening or quickening the cadence, and without shortening or lengthening the step. The whole rank will promptly conform itself to the new direction: to effect which, each man will advance the shoulder opposite to the guide, take the double quick step, to carry himself in the new direction, turn the head and eyes to the side of the guide, and retake the touch of the elbow on that side, in placing himself on the alignment of the guide, from whom he will take the step, and then resume the direct position of the head. Each man will thus arrive successively on the alignment.

Wheeling and changing direction to the side of the guide, in double quick time.

403. When the recruits comprehend and execute well, in quick time, the wheels at a halt, and in

marching, and the change of direction to the side of the guide, the instructor will cause the same movements to be repeated in double quick time.

404. These various movements will be executed by the same commands and according to the same principles as in quick time, except that the command *double quick* will precede that of *march*. In wheeling while marching, the pivot man will take steps of eleven inches, and in the changes of direction to the side of the guide, the men on the side opposite the guide must increase the gait in order to bring themselves into line.

405. The instructor, in order not to fatigue the recruits, and not to divide their attention, will cause them to execute the several movements of which this lesson is composed, first without arms, and next, after the mechanism be well comprehended, with arms.

Lesson V.

To stack arms.

The men being at order arms, the instructor will command:

Stack—Arms.

410. At this command, the front rank man of every even numbered file will pass his piece before him, seizing it with the left hand near the upper band; will place the butt a little in advance of his left toe, the barrel turned towards the body, and draw the rammer slightly from its place; the front rank man of every odd numbered file will also draw the rammer slightly, and pass his piece to the man next on his left, who will seize it with the right hand near the upper band, and place the butt a little in advance of the right toe of the man next on his right, the barrel turned to the

front; he will then cross the rammers of the two pieces, the rammer of the piece of the odd numbered man being inside; the rear rank man of every even file will also draw his rammer, lean his piece forward, the lock-plate downwards, advance the right foot about six inches, and insert the rammer between the rammer and barrel of the piece of his front rank man; with his left hand he will place the butt of his piece on the ground, thirty-two inches in rear of, and perpendicular to, the front rank, bringing back his right foot by the side of the left; the front rank man of every even file will at the same time lean the stack to the rear, quit it with his right hand and force all the rammers down. The stack being thus formed, the rear rank man of every odd file will pass his piece into his left hand, the barrel to the front and inclining it forward, will rest it on the stack.

411. The men of both ranks having taken the position of the soldier without arms, the instructor will command:

1. *Break ranks.* 2. MARCH.

To resume arms.

412. Both ranks being re-formed in rear of their stacks, the instructor will command:

Take—ARMS.

413. At this command, the rear rank man of every odd numbered file will withdraw his piece from the stack; the front rank man of every even file will seize his own piece with the left hand and that of the man on his right with his right hand, both above the lower band; the rear rank man of the even file will seize his piece with the right hand below the lower band; these two men will raise up the stack to loosen the rammers; the front rank man of every odd file will

facilitate the disengagement of the rammers, if necessary, by drawing them out slightly with the left hand, and will receive his piece from the hand of the man next on his left; the four men will retake the position of the soldier at order arms.

END OF THE SCHOOL OF THE SOLDIER.

TITLE THIRD.

SCHOOL OF THE COMPANY.

General Rules and Division of the School of the Company.

1. Instruction by company will always precede that by battalion, and the object being to prepare the soldiers for the higher school, the exercises of detail by company will be strictly adhered to, as well in respect to principles, as the order of progression herein prescribed.

2. There will be attached to a company undergoing elementary instruction, a captain, a covering sergeant, and a certain number of file-closers, the whole posted in the manner indicated, Title First, and, according to the same Title, the officer charged with the exercise of such company will herein be denominated the *instructor*.

*Manner of forming the company.**

216. The whole company being assembled on its parade ground, or in the rendezvous, the *first*, or orderly sergeant, will command:

Fall in—COMPANY.

At this command, the corporals and privates will form in one rank, faced to the right, and in the order

* Gilham.

of height from right to left, the tallest man on the right (now head of the company), the next tallest man immediately covering the first, and so on to the left or rear of the rank, in which position will be placed the shortest man. The other sergeants will take post in the rank of file-closers, two paces to the right of the company, and assist the first sergeant in forming the company.

When the men have their places, the first sergeant will command :

FRONT.

The second sergeant, who is the left guide of the company, will now place himself on the left of the company, and the orderly sergeant will promptly command :

1. *In two ranks, form company.* 2. *Left*—FACE.
3. MARCH.

At the command *left face*, the whole company will face to the left, except the guide and man on the left, who stand fast.

At the command *march*, the whole of the men who faced to the left will step off together ; the second man, counting from the left, will place himself in the rear rank, behind the man next to the guide, and face to the front ; the two following men will, in like manner, in closing up, form the next file, the third man in the front, and the fourth in the rear rank behind him, and all the other men will come successively to form files, two deep, to the right of those already formed.*

The officers will now take their posts as prescribed in No. 12 ; if the captain has to discharge the duties of instructor, the first lieutenant will take his place

* When the company is in good discipline, the files may be formed in *two* ranks at once, each man having his proper number in the company depending upon his height, and being able to take his appropriate place without creating confusion.

on the right of the front rank, the second lieutenant replacing the first behind the centre of the fourth section.

4. The instructor will then cause the files to be numbered, and for this purpose will command:

In each rank—Count twos.

5. At this command, the men will count in each rank, from right to left, pronouncing in a loud and distinct voice, in the same tone, without hurry and without turning the head, *one*, *two*, according to the place which each one occupies. He will also cause the company to be divided into platoons and sections, taking care that the first platoon is always composed of an even number of files.

LESSON FIRST.

Article First.

To open ranks.

8. The company being at ordered arms, the ranks and file-closers well aligned, when the instructor shall wish to cause the ranks to be opened, he will direct the left guide to place himself on the left of the front rank, which being executed, he will command:

1. *Attention.* 2. *Company.* 3. *Shoulder*—Arms.
4. *To the rear open order.*

9. At the fourth command, the covering sergeant, and the left guide will step off smartly to the rear, four paces from the front rank, in order to mark the alignment of the rear rank. They will judge this distance by the eye, without counting the steps.

10. The instructor will place himself at the same time on the right flank, in order to observe if these

two non-commissioned officers are on a line parallel to the front rank, and, if necessary, to correct their positions, which being executed, he will command:

5. March.

11. At this command, the front rank will stand fast.

12. The rear rank will step to the rear without counting the steps, and will place themselves on the alignment marked for this rank, conforming to what is prescribed in the school of the soldier, No. 321.

13. The covering sergeant will align the rear rank on the left guide placed to mark the left of this rank.

14. The file-closers will march to the rear at the same time with the rear rank, and will place themselves two paces from this rank when it is aligned.

15. The instructor seeing the rear rank aligned, will command:

6. Front.

16. At this command, the sergeant on the left of the rear rank will return to his place as a file-closer.

Article Second.

Alignments in open ranks.

18. The ranks being open, the instructor will, in the first exercises, align the ranks, man by man, the better to inculcate the principles.

19. To effect this, he will cause two or four men on the right or left of each rank to march two or three paces forward, and, after having aligned them, command:

By file right (or *left*)—Dress.

20. At this the men of each rank will move up successively on the alignment, each man being preceded

by his neighbor in the same rank, towards the basis, by two paces, and having correctly aligned himself, will cast his eyes to the front.

21. Successive alignments having habituated the soldiers to dress correctly, the instructor will cause the ranks to align themselves at once, forward and backward, sometimes in a direction parallel, and sometimes in one oblique, to the original direction, giving, in each case, two, or four men to serve as a basis of alignment to each rank. To effect which, he will command:

1. *Right* (or *left*)—DRESS. 2. FRONT.

or

1. *Right* (or *left*) *backward*—DRESS. 2. FRONT.

22. In oblique alignments, in *opened* ranks, the men of the rear rank will not seek to cover their file-leaders, as the sole object of the exercise is to teach them to align themselves correctly in their respective ranks, in the different directions.

23. In the several alignments, the captain will superintend the front rank and the covering sergeant the rear rank. For this purpose, they will place themselves on the side by which the ranks are dressed.

24. In oblique alignments, the men will conform the line of their shoulders to the new direction of their ranks, and will place themselves on the alignment as has been prescribed in the school of the soldier, No. 317, or No. 321, according as the new direction shall be in front or rear of the original one.

ARTICLE FOURTH.

To close ranks.

28. The instructor will command:

1. *Close order.* 2. MARCH.

29. At the command *march*, the rear rank will close up in quick time, each man directing himself on his file leader.

Article Fifth.

Alignments, and manual of arms in closed ranks.

30. The ranks being closed, the instructor will cause to be executed parallel and oblique alignments by the right and left, forward and backward, observing to place always two or four files to serve as a basis of alignment. He will give the commands prescribed, No. 21.

31. In alignments in closed ranks, the captain will superintend the front rank, and the covering sergeant the rear rank. They will habituate themselves to judge the alignment by the lines of the eyes and shoulders, in casting a glance of the eye along the front and rear of the ranks.

32. The moment the captain perceives the greater number of the front rank aligned, he will command Front, and rectify, afterwards, if necessary, the alignment of the other men by the means prescribed in the school of the soldier, No. 320. The rear rank will conform to the alignment of the front rank, superintended by the covering sergeant.

33. The ranks being steady, the instructor will place himself on the flank, to verify their alignment. He will also see that each rear rank man covers accurately his file-leader.

35. In all alignments, the file-closers will preserve the distance of two paces from the rear rank.

36. The alignments being ended, the instructor will cause to be executed the manual of arms.

41. The instructor may also, when he shall judge proper, cause arms to be stacked, which will be executed as prescribed, school of the soldier.

LESSON SECOND.

42. The instructor, wishing to pass to the second lesson, will cause the company to take arms, if stacks have been formed, and command:

1. *Attention.* 2. *Company.* 3. *Shoulder*—ARMS.

43. The instructor will then cause loadings and firings to be executed in the following order:

ARTICLE FIRST.

To load in four times and at will.

44. Loading in four *times* will be commanded and executed as prescribed in the school of the soldier, No 251, and following. The instructor will cause this exercise to be often repeated, in succession, before passing to loading at will.

45. Loading at will will be commanded and executed as prescribed in the school of the soldier, No. 256. In priming, when loading in four *times*, and also at will, the captain and covering sergeant will half face to the right with the men, and face to the front when the man next to them, respectively, brings his piece to the shoulder.

ARTICLE SECOND.

To fire by company.

48. The instructor, wishing to cause the fire by company to be executed, will command:

1. *Fire by company.* 2. *Commence firing.*

49. At the first command, the captain will promptly place himself opposite the centre of his company, and

four paces in rear of the line of file-closers; the covering sergeant will retire to that line, and place himself opposite to his interval. *This rule is general, for both the captain and covering sergeant, in all the different firings.*

50. At the second command, the captain will add: 1. *Company;* 2. READY; 3. AIM; 4. FIRE; 5. LOAD.

51. At the command *load*, the men will load their pieces, and then take the position of *ready*, as prescribed in the school of the soldier.

52. The captain will immediately recommence the firing, by the commands:

1. *Company.* 2. AIM. 3. FIRE. 4. LOAD.

53. The firing will be thus continued until the signal to cease firing is sounded.

54. The captain will sometimes cause aim to be taken to the right and left, simply observing to pronounce *right* (or *left*) oblique, before the command *aim.*

ARTICLE THIRD.

The fire by file.

55. The instructor wishing to cause the fire by file to be executed, will command:

1. *Fire by file.* 2. *Company.* 3. READY. 4. *Commence firing.*

56. The third and fourth commands will be executed as prescribed in the school of the soldier, No. 275 and following.

57. The fire will be commenced by the right file of the company; the next file will take aim at the instant the first brings down pieces to-reload, and so on to the left; but this progression will only be observed in the first discharge, after which each man will re-

load and fire without regulating himself by others, conforming himself to what is prescribed in the school of the soldier, No. 280.

Article Fourth.

The fire by rank.

58. The instructor wishing the fire by rank to be executed, will command:

1. *Fire by rank.* 2. *Company.* 3. Ready.
4. *Rear rank*—Aim. 5. Fire. 6. Load.

69. The fifth and sixth commands will be executed as is prescribed in the school of the soldier, No. 285 and following.

60. When the instructor sees one or two pieces in the rear rank at a ready, he will command:

1. *Front rank.* 2. Aim. 3. Fire. 4. Load.

61. The firing will be continued thus by alternate ranks, until the signal is given to cease firing.

62. The instructor will sometimes cause aim to be taken to the right and left, conforming to what is prescribed, No. 54.

63. The instructor will cause the firing to cease, whether by company, by file, or by rank, by sounding the signal *to cease firing*, and at the instant this sound commences, the men will cease to fire, conforming to what is prescribed in the school of the soldier, No. 282.

64. The signal to cease firing will be always followed by a bugle note, or tap of the drum; at which sound, the captain and covering sergeant will promptly resume their places in line, and will rectify, if necessary, the alignment of the ranks.

67. The fire by file being that which is most frequently used against an enemy, it is highly important

that it be rendered perfectly familiar to the troops. The instructor will, therefore, give it almost exclusive preference, and labor to cause the men to aim with care, and always, if possible, at some particular object. As it is of the utmost importance that the men should aim with precision in battle, this principle will be rigidly enforced in the exercises for purposes of instruction.

Article Fifth.

To fire by the rear rank.

68. The instructor will cause the several fires to be executed to the rear, that is, by the rear rank. To effect this, he will command:

1. *Face by the rear rank.* 2. *Company.* 3. *About*—Face.

69. At the first command, the captain will step out and place himself near to, and facing the right file of his company; the covering sergeant, and file closers, will pass quickly through the captain's interval, and place themselves faced to the rear, the covering sergeant a pace behind the captain, and the file closers two paces from the front rank opposite to their places in line, each passing behind the covering sergeant.

70. At the third command, which will be given at the instant the last file closer shall have passed through the interval, the company will face about; the captain will place himself in his interval in the rear rank, now become the front, and the covering sergeant will cover him in the front rank, now become the rear.

71. The company having faced by the rear rank, the instructor will cause it to execute the fire by company, both direct and oblique, the fire by file, and the fire by rank, by the commands and means prescribed in the three preceding articles; the captain, covering

sergeant, and the men will conform themselves, in like manner, to what is therein prescribed.

72. The fire by file will commence on the left of the company, now become the right. In the fire by rank, the firing will commence with the front rank, now become the rear.

73. To resume the proper front, the instructor will command:

1. *Face by the front rank.* 2. *Company.* 3. *About*—FACE.

74. At the first command, the captain, covering sergeant and file closers will conform to what is prescribed Nos. 69 and 70.

75. At the third command, the company having faced about, the captain and covering sergeant will resume their places in line.

76. In this lesson, the instructor will impress on the men the importance of aiming always at some particular object, and of holding the piece as prescribed in the school of the soldier, No. 178.

77. The instructor will recommend to the captain to make a short pause between the commands *aim* and *fire*, to give the men time to aim with accuracy.

LESSON THIRD.

ARTICLE FIRST.

To advance in line of battle.

84. The company being in line of battle, and correctly aligned, when the instructor shall wish to exercise it in marching by the front, he will assure himself that the shoulders of the captain and covering sergeant are perfectly in the direction of their respective ranks, and that the sergeant accurately covers the captain; the instructor will then place himself twenty-

five or thirty paces in front of them, face to the rear, and place himself exactly on the prolongation of the line passing between their heels.

85. The instructor, being aligned on the directing file, will command:

1. *Company, forward.*

86. At this, a sergeant, previously designated, will move six paces in advance of the captain: the instructor, from the position prescribed, will correctly align this sergeant on the prolongation of the directing file.

87. This advanced sergeant who is to be charged with the direction, will, the moment his position is assured, take two points on the ground in the straight line which would pass between his own and the heels of the instructor.

88. These dispositions being made, the instructor will step aside, and command:

2. MARCH.

89. At this, the company will step off with life. The directing sergeant will observe, with the greatest precision, the length and cadence of the step, marching on the two points he has chosen; he will take in succession, and always a little before arriving at the point nearest to him, new points in advance, exactly in the same line with the first two, and at the same distance of some fifteen or twenty paces from each other. The captain will march steadily in the trace of the directing sergeant, keeping always six paces from him; the men will each maintain the head direct to the front, feel lightly the elbow of his neighbor on the side of direction, and conform himself to the principles prescribed, school of the soldier, for the march by the front.

90. The man next to the captain, will take special care not to pass him; to this end he will keep the line

of his shoulders a little in the rear, but in the same direction with those of the captain.

91. The file closers will march at the habitual distance of two paces behind the rear rank.

92. If the men lose the step, the instructor will command:

To the—STEP.

93. At this command, the men will glance towards the directing sergeant, retake the step from him, and again direct their eyes to the front.

94. The instructor will cause the captain and covering sergeant to be posted sometimes on the right, and sometimes on the left of the company.

95. The directing sergeant, in advance, having the greatest influence on the march of the company, he will be selected for the precision of his step, his habit of maintaining his shoulders in a square with a given line of direction, and of prolonging that line without variation.

ARTICLE SECOND.

To halt the company, marching in line of battle, and to align it.

99. The instructor, wishing to halt the company, will command:

1. *Company.* 2. HALT.

100. At the second command, the company will halt; the directing sergeant will remain in advance, unless ordered to return to the line of file-closers. The company being at a halt, the instructor may advance the first three or four files on the side of direction, and align the company on that basis, or he may confine himself to causing the alignment to be rectified.

In this last case, he will command: *Captain, rectify the alignment.* The captain will direct the covering sergeant to attend to the rear rank, when each, glancing his eyes along his rank, will promptly rectify it, conforming to what is prescribed in the school of the soldier, No. 320.

Article Third.

Oblique march in line of battle.

101. The company being in the direct march, when the instructor shall wish to cause it to march obliquely, he will command:

1. *Right* (or *left*) *oblique.* 2. March.

102. At the command *march*, the company will take the oblique step. The men will accurately observe the principles prescribed in the school of the soldier, No. 331. The rear rank men will preserve their distances, and march in rear of the man next on the right (or left) of their habitual file-leaders.

103. When the instructor wishes the direct march to be resumed, he will command:

1. *Forward.* 2. March.

104. At the command *march*, the company will resume the direct march. The instructor will move briskly twenty paces in front of the captain, and facing the company, will place himself exactly in the prolongation of the captain and covering sergeant; and then, by a sign, will move the directing sergeant on the same line, if he be not already on it; the latter will immediately take two points on the ground between himself and the instructor, and as he advances, will take new points of direction, as is explained No. 89.

105. In the oblique march, the men not having the touch of elbows, the guide will always be on the side towards which the oblique is made, without any indication to that effect being given; and when the direct march is resumed, the guide will be, equally without indication, on the side where it was previous to the oblique.

Article Fourth.

To mark time, to march in double quick time, and the back step.

109. The company being in the direct march and in quick time, the instructor, to cause it to mark time, will command:

1. *Mark time.* 2. March.

110. To resume the march, he will command:

1. *Forward.* 2. March.

111. To cause the march in double quick time, the instructor will command:

1. *Double quick.* 2. March.

112. The command *march* will be pronounced at the instant either foot is coming to the ground.

113. To resume quick time, the instructor will command:

1. *Quick time.* 2. March.

114. The command *march* will be pronounced at the instant either foot is coming to the ground.

115. The company being at a halt, the instructor may cause it to march in the back step; to this effect, he will command:

1. *Company backward.* 2. March.

116. The back step will be executed according to the principles prescribed in the school of the soldier No. 247, but the use of it being rare, the instructor will not cause more than fifteen or twenty steps to be taken in succession, and to that extent but seldom.

117. The instructor ought not to exercise the company in marching in double quick time till the men are well established in the length and swiftness of the pace in quick time: he will then endeavor to render the march of one hundred and sixty-five steps in the minute equally easy and familiar, and also cause them to observe the same erectness of body and composure of mind, as if marching in quick time.

Article Fifth.

To march in retreat.

119. The company being halted and correctly aligned, when the instructor shall wish to cause it to march in retreat, he will command:

1. *Company.* 2. *About*—Face.

120. The company having faced to the rear, the instructor will place himself in front of the directing file, conforming to what is prescribed, No. 84.

121. The instructor, being correctly established on the prolongation of the directing file, will command:

3. *Company, forward.*

122. At this, the directing sergeant will conform himself to what is prescribed, Nos. 86 and 87, with this difference—he will place himself six paces in front of the line of file closers, now leading.

123. The covering sergeant will step into the line of file closers, opposite to his interval, and the captain

will place himself in the rear rank, now become the front.

124. This disposition being promptly made, the instructor will command:

4. MARCH.

125. At this, the directing sergeant, the captain, and the men, will conform themselves to what is prescribed No. 89, and following.

126. The instructor will cause to be executed, marching in retreat, all that is prescribed for marching in advance; the commands and the means of execution will be the same.

127. The instructor having halted the company, will, when he may wish, cause it to face to the front by the commands prescribed No. 119. The captain, the covering sergeant, and the directing sergeant, will resume their habitual places in line, the moment they shall have faced about.

128. The company being in march by the front rank, if the instructor should wish it to march in retreat, he will cause the right about to be executed while marching, and to this effect will command:

1. *Company.* 2. *Right about.* 3. MARCH.

129. At the third command, the company will promptly face about, and re-commence the march by the rear rank.

130. The directing sergeant will face about with the company, and will move rapidly six paces in front of the file closers, and upon the prolongation of the guide. The instructor will place him in the proper direction by the means prescribed No. 104. The captain, the covering sergeant, and the men, will conform to the principles prescribed for the march in retreat.

131. When the instructor wishes the company to march by the front rank, he will give the same com-

mands, and will regulate the direction of the march by the same means.

132. The instructor will cause to be executed in double quick time, all the movements prescribed in the 3d, 4th, 5th and 6th lessons of this school, with the exception of the march backwards, which will be executed only in quick time. He will give the same commands, observing to add *double quick* before the command *march*.

133. When the pieces are carried on the right shoulder, in quick time, the distance between the ranks will be sixteen inches. Whenever, therefore, the instructor brings the company from a shoulder to this position, the rear rank must shorten a little the first steps in order to gain the prescribed distance, and will lengthen the steps, on the contrary, in order to close up when the pieces are again brought to a shoulder. In marching in double quick time, the distance between the ranks will be twenty-six inches, and the pieces will be carried habitually on the right shoulder.

134. Whenever a company is halted, the men will bring their pieces at once to a shoulder at the command *halt*. The rear rank will close to its proper distance. *These rules are general.*

LESSON FOURTH.

Article First.

To march by the flank.

135. The company being in line of battle, and at a halt, when the instructor shall wish to cause it to march by the right flank, he will command:

1. *Company, right*—FACE. 2. *Forward.* 3. MARCH.

136. At the first command, the company will face to the right, the covering sergeant will place himself at the head of the front rank, the captain having stepped out for the purpose, so far as to find himself by the side of the sergeant, and on his left; the front rank will double as is prescribed in the school of the soldier, No. 352; the rear rank will, at the same time, side step to the right one pace, and double in the same manner; so that when the movement is completed, the files will be formed of four men aligned, and elbow to elbow. The intervals will be preserved.

137. The file closers will also move by side step to the right, so that when the ranks are formed, they will be two paces from the rearmost rank.

138. At the command *march*, the company will move off briskly in quick time; the covering sergeant at the head of the front rank, and the captain on his left, will march straight forward. The men of each file will march abreast of their respective front rank men, heads direct to the front; the file closers will march opposite their places in line of battle.

140. The instructor will cause the march by the left flank to be executed by the same commands, substituting *left* for *right;* the ranks will double as has been prescribed in the school for the soldier, No. 354; the rear rank will side-step to the left one pace before doubling.

141. At the instant the company faces to the left, the left guide will place himself at the head of the front rank; the captain will pass rapidly to the left, and place himself by the right side of this guide; the covering sergeant will replace the captain in the front rank, the moment the latter quits it to go to the left.

Article Second.

To change direction by file.

142. The company being faced by the flank, and either in march, or at a halt, when the instructor shall wish to cause it to wheel by file, he will command:

1. *By file, left,* (or *right.*) 2. March.

143. At the command *march,* the first file will wheel; if to the side of the front rank man, the latter will take care not to turn at once, but to describe a short arc of a circle, shortening a little the first five or six steps in order to give time to the fourth man of this file to conform himself to the movement. If the wheel be to the side of the rear rank, the front rank man will wheel in the step of twenty-eight inches, and the fourth man will conform himself to the movement by describing a short arc of a circle, as has been explained. Each file will come to a wheel on the same ground where that which preceded it wheeled.

144. The instructor will see that the wheel be executed according to these principles, in order that the distance between the files may always be preserved, and that there be no check or hindrance at the wheeling point.

Article Third.

To halt the company marching by the flank, and to face it to the front.

145. To effect these objects the instructor will command:

1. *Company.* 2. Halt. 3. Front.

146. The second and third commands will be executed as prescribed in the school of the soldier, Nos. 359 and 360. As soon as the files have undoubled, the rear rank will close to its proper distance. The captain and covering sergeant, as well as the left guide, if the march be by the left flank, will return to their habitual places in line at the instant the company faces to the front.

147. The instructor may then align the company by one of the means prescribed, No. 100.

Article Fourth.

The company being in march by the flank, to form it on the right (or left) by file into line of battle.

148. If the company be marching by the right flank, the instructor will command:

1. *On the right, by file into line.* 2. March.

149. At the command *march*, the rear rank men doubled will mark time; the captain and the covering sergeant will turn to the right, march straight forward, and be halted by the instructor when they shall have passed at least six paces beyond the rank of file closers; the captain will place himself correctly on the line of battle, and will direct the alignment as the men of the front rank successively arrive; the covering sergeant will place himself behind the captain at the distance of the rear rank; the two men on the right of the front rank doubled, will continue to march, and passing beyond the covering sergeant and the captain, will turn to the right; after turning, they will continue to march elbow to elbow, and direct themselves towards the line of battle, but when they shall arrive at two paces from this line, the even number will shorten the step so that the odd number may pre-

cede him on the line, the odd number placing himself by the side and on the left of the captain; the even number will afterwards oblique to the left, and place himself on the left of the odd number; the next two men of the front rank doubled, will pass in the same manner behind the two first, turn then to the right, and place themselves, according to the means just explained, to the left, and by the side of, the two men already established on the line; the remaining files of this rank will follow in succession, and be formed to the left in the same manner. The rear rank doubled will execute the movement in the manner already explained for the front rank, taking care not to commence the movement until four men of the front rank are established on the line of battle; the rear rank men, as they arrive on the line, will cover accurately their file leaders.

150. If the company be marching by the left flank, the instructor will cause it to form by file on the left into line of battle, according to the same principles and by the same commands, substituting the indication *left* for *right*. In this case, the odd numbers will shorten the step, so that the even numbers may precede them on the line. The captain, placed on the left of the front rank, and the left guide, will return to their places in line of battle, by order of the instructor, after the company shall be formed and aligned.

151. To enable the men the better to comprehend the mechanism of this movement, the instructor will at first cause it to be executed separately by each rank doubled, and afterwards by the two ranks united and doubled.

Article Fifth.

The company being in march by the flank, to form it by company, or by platoon, into line, and to cause it to face to the right and left in marching.

153. The company being in march by the right flank, the instructor will order the captain to form it into line; the captain will immediately command: 1. *By company, into line:* 2. March.

154. At the command *march*, the covering sergeant will continue to march straight forward; the men will advance the right shoulder, take the double quick step, and move into line, by the shortest route, taking care to undouble the files, and to come on the line one after the other.

155. As the front rank men successively arrive in line with the covering sergeant, they will take from him the step, and then turn their eyes to the front.

156. The men of the rear rank will conform to the movements of their respective file leaders, but without endeavoring to arrive in line at the same time with the latter.

157. At the instant the movement begins, the captain will face to his company in order to follow up the execution; and, as soon as the company is formed, he will command, *guide left*, place himself two paces before the centre, face to the front, and take the step of the company.

158. At the command *guide left*, the second sergeant will promptly place himself in the front rank, on the left, to serve as guide, and the covering sergeant who is on the opposite flank will remain there.

159. When the company marches by the left flank, this movement will be executed by the same commands, and according to the same principles; the company being formed, the captain will command *guide right*, and place himself in front of his company as above;

the covering sergeant who is on the right of the front rank will serve as guide, and the second sergeant placed on the left flank will remain there.

160. Thus, in a column by company, right or left in front, the covering sergeant and the second sergeant of each company will always be placed on the right and left, respectively, of the front rank; they will be denominated *right guide* and *left guide*, and the one or the other charged with the direction.

161. The company being in march by the flank, if it be the wish of the instructor to cause it to form platoons, he will give an order to that effect to the captain, who will command:

1. *By platoon, into line.* 2. MARCH.

162. The movement will be executed by each platoon according to the above principles. The captain will place himself before the centre of the first platoon, and the first lieutenant before the centre of the second, passing through the opening made in the centre of the company, if the march be by the right flank, and around the left of his platoon, if the march be by the left: in this last case, the captain will also pass around the left of the second platoon in order to place himself in front of the first. Both the captain and lieutenant, without waiting for each other, will command *guide left* (or *right*) at the instant their respective platoons are formed.

163. At the command *guide left* (or *right*), the guide of each platoon will pass rapidly to the indicated flank of the platoon, if not already there.

164. The right guide of the company will always serve as the guide of the right or left of the first platoon, and the left guide of the company will serve, in like manner, as the guide of the second platoon.

165. Thus, in a column, by platoon, there will be but one guide to each platoon; he will always be placed on its left flank, if the right be in front, and on the right flank, if the left be in front.

166. In these movements, the file-closers will follow the platoons to which they are attached.

167. The instructor may cause the company, marching by the flank, to form by company, or by platoon, into line, by his own direct commands, using those prescribed for the captain, No. 153 or 161.

168. The instructor will exercise the company in passing, without a halt, from the march by the front, to the march by the flank, and reciprocally. In either case, he will employ the commands prescribed in the school of the soldier, No. 363, substituting *company* for *squad*. The company will face to the right or left, in marching, and the captain, the guides and file-closers will conform themselves to what is prescribed for each in the march by the flank, or in the march by the front of a company supposed to be a subdivision of a column.

169. If, after facing to the right or left, in marching, the company find itself faced by the rear rank, the captain will place himself two paces behind the centre of the front rank, now in the rear, the guides will pass to the rear rank, now leading, and the file-closers will march in front of this rank.

170. The instructor, in order to avoid fatiguing the men, and to prevent them from being negligent, in the position of shoulder arms, will sometimes order support arms in marching by the flank, and arms on the right shoulder, when marching in line.

LESSON FIFTH.

Article First.

To break into column by platoon, either at a halt or in march.

171. The company being at a halt, in line of battle,

the instructor, wishing to break into column, by platoon to the right, will command:

1. *By platoon, right wheel.* 2. MARCH.

172. At the first command, the chiefs of platoon will rapidly place themselves two paces before the centres of their respective platoons, the lieutenant passing around the left of the company. They need not occupy themselves with dressing, one upon the other. The covering sergeant will replace the captain in the front rank.

173. At the command *march*, the right front rank man of each platoon will face to the right, the covering sergeant standing fast; the chief of each platoon will move quickly by the shortest line, a little beyond the point at which the marching flank will rest when the wheel shall be completed, face to the late rear, and place himself so that the line which he forms with the man on the right (who had faced) shall be perpendicular to that occupied by the company in line of battle; each platoon will wheel according to the principles prescribed for the wheel on a fixed pivot, and when the man who conducts the marching flank shall approach near to the perpendicular, its chief will command:

1. *Platoon.* 2. HALT.

174. At the command *halt*, which will be given at the instant the man who conducts the marching flank shall have arrived at three paces from the perpendicular, the platoon will halt; the covering sergeant will move to the point where the left of the first platoon is at rest, passing by the front rank; the second sergeant will place himself in like manner, in respect to the second platoon. Each will take care to leave between himself and the man on the right of his platoon a space equal to its front; the captain and first lieutenant will look to this, and each take care to align the

sergeant between himself and the man of the platoon who had faced to the right.

175. The guide of each platoon, being thus established on the perpendicular, each chief will place himself two paces outside of his guide, and facing towards him, will command:

3. *Left*—DRESS.

176. The alignment being ended, each chief of platoon will command, FRONT, and place himself two paces before its centre.

177. The file-closers will conform themselves to the movement of their respective platoons, preserving always the distance of two paces from the rear rank.

178. The company will break by platoon to the left, according to the same principles. The instructor will command:

1. *By platoon, left wheel.* 2. MARCH.

179. The first command will be executed in the same manner as if breaking by platoon to the right.

180. At the command *march*, the left front rank man of each platoon will face to the left, and the platoons will wheel to the left, according to the principles prescribed for the wheel on a fixed pivot; the chiefs of platoon will conform to the principles indicated Nos. 173 and 174.

181. At the command *halt*, given by the chief of each platoon, the covering sergeant on the right of the front rank of the first platoon, and the second sergeant near the left of the second platoon, will each move to the points where the right of his platoon is to rest. The chief of each platoon should be careful to align the sergeant between himself and the man of the platoon who had faced to the left, and will then command:

Right—DRESS.

182. The platoons being aligned, each chief of platoon will command, FRONT, and place himself opposite its centre.

183. The instructor wishing to break the company by platoon to the right, and to move the column forward after the wheel is completed, will caution the company to that effect, and command:

1. *By platoon, right wheel.* 2. MARCH.

184. At the first command, the chiefs of platoon will move rapidly in front of their respective platoons, conforming to what has been prescribed No. 172, and will remain in this position during the continuance of the wheel. The covering sergeant will replace the chief of the first platoon in the front rank.

185. At the command *march*, the platoons will wheel to the right, conforming to the principles herein prescribed; the man on the pivot will not face to the right, but will mark time, conforming himself to the movement of the marching flank; and when the man who is on the left of this flank shall arrive near the perpendicular, the instructor will command:

3. *Forward.* 4. MARCH. 5. *Guide left.*

186. At the fourth command, which will be given at the instant the wheel is completed, the platoons will move straight to the front, all the men taking the step of twenty-eight inches. The covering sergeant and the second sergeant will move rapidly to the left of their respective platoons, the former passing before the front rank. The leading guide will immediately take points on the ground in the direction which may be indicated to him by the instructor.

187. At the fifth command, the men will take the touch of elbows lightly to the left.

188. If the guide of the second platoon should lose his distance, or the line of direction, he will conform to the principles herein prescribed Nos. 202 and 203.

189. If the company be marching in line to the front, the instructor will cause it to break by platoon to the right by the same commands. At the command *march*, the platoons will wheel in the manner already explained; the man on the pivot will take care to mark time in his place, without advancing or receding; the instructor, the chiefs of platoon, and the guides, will conform to what has been prescribed, Nos. 184 and following.

190. The company may be broken by platoons to the left, according to the same principles, and by inverse means the instructor giving the commands prescribed Nos. 183 and 185, substituting *left* for *right*, and reciprocally.

Article Second.

To march in column.

195. The company having broken by platoon, right (or left) in front, the instructor, wishing to cause the column to march, will throw himself twenty-five or thirty paces in front, face to the guides, place himself correctly, on their direction, and caution the leading guide to take points on the ground.

196. The instructor being thus placed, the guide of the leading platoon will take two points on the ground in the straight line passing between his own and the heels of the instructor.

197. These dispositions being made, the instructor will step aside, and command:

1. *Column, forward.* 2. *Guide left* (or *right*). 3. March.

198. At the command *march*, promptly repeated by the chiefs of platoon, they, as well as the guides, will lead off, by a decided step, their respective platoons, in order that the whole may move smartly, and at the same moment.

199. The men will each feel lightly the elbow of his neighbor towards the guide, and conform himself, in marching, to the principles prescribed in the school of the soldier, No. 327. The man next to the guide, in each platoon, will take care never to pass him, and also to march always about six inches to the right (or left) from him, in order not to push him out of the direction.

200. The leading guide will observe, with the greatest precision, the length and cadence of the step, and maintain the direction of his march by the means prescribed No. 89.

201. The following guide will march exactly in the trace of the leading one, preserving between the latter and himself a distance precisely equal to the front of his platoon, and marching in the same step with the leading guide.

Article Third.

To change direction.

211. The changes of direction of a column while marching, will be executed according to the principles prescribed for wheeling on the march. Whenever, therefore, a column is to change direction, the instructor will change the guide, if not already there, to the flank opposite the side to which the change is to be made.

212. The column being in march right in front, if it be the wish of the instructor to change direction to the right, he will give the order to the chief of the first platoon, and immediately go himself, or send a marker to the point at which the change of direction is to be made; the instructor, or marker, will place himself on the direction of the guides, so as to present the breast to that flank of the column.

213. The leading guide will direct his march on that person, so that, in passing, his left arm may just graze

his breast. When the leading guide shall have approached near to the marker, the chief of his platoon will command:

1. *Right wheel.* 2. MARCH.

214. The first command will be given when the platoon is at the distance of four paces from the marker.

215. At the command *march*, which will be pronounced at the instant the guide shall have arrived opposite the marker, the platoon will wheel to the right, conforming to what is prescribed in the school of the soldier, No. 396.

216. The wheel being finished, the chief of each platoon will command:

3. *Forward.* 4. MARCH.

217. These commands will be pronounced and executed as is prescribed in the school of the soldier, Nos. 398 and 399. The guide of the first platoon will take points on the ground in the new direction, in order the better to regulate the march.

218. The second platoon will continue to march straight forward till up with the marker, when it will wheel to the right, and re-take the direct march by the same commands and the same means which governed the first platoon.

219. The column being in march right in front, if the instructor should wish to change direction to the left, he will command, *guide right.* At this command, the two guides will move rapidly to the right of their respective platoons, each passing in front of his subdivision; the men will take the touch of elbows to the right; the instructor will afterwards conform to what is prescribed No. 212.

220. The change of direction to the left will then be executed according to the same principles as the change of direction to the right, but by inverse means.

221. When the change of direction is completed, the instructor will command, *guide left.*

222. The changes of direction in a column, left in front, will be executed according to the same principles.

223. In changes of direction in double quick time, the platoons will wheel according to the principles prescribed in the school of the soldier, No. 404.

224. In order to prepare the men for those formations in line, which can be executed only by turning to the right or the left, the instructor will sometimes cause the column to change direction to the side of the guide. In this case, the chief of the leading platoon will command: *Left* (or *right*) *turn*, instead of *left* (or *right*) *wheel.* The subdivisions will each turn, in succession, conforming to what is prescribed in the school of the soldier, No. 402. The leading guide, as soon as he has turned, will take points on the ground, the better to regulate the direction of the march.

Article Fourth.

To halt the column.

231. The column being in march, when the instructor shall wish to halt it, he will command:

1. *Column.* 2. Halt.

232. At the second command, promptly repeated by the chiefs of platoon, the column will halt; the guides also will stand fast, although they may have lost both distance and direction.

233. If the command *halt*, be not repeated with the greatest vivacity, and executed at the same instant, distances will be lost.

234. If a guide, having lost his distance, seek to recover it after that command, he will only throw

his fault on the following guide, who, if he have marched well, will no longer be at his proper distance; and if the latter regain what he has thus lost, the movement will be propagated to the rear of the column.

Article Fifth.

Being in column by platoon, to form to the right or left into line of battle, either at a halt or on the march.

235. The instructor having halted the column, right in front, and wishing to form it into line of battle, will place himself at platoon distance in front of the leading guide, face to him, and rectify, if necessary, the position of the guide beyond; which being executed, he will command:

Left—Dress.

236. At this command, which will not be repeated by the chiefs of platoon, each of them will place himself briskly two paces outside of his guide, and direct the alignment of the platoon perpendicularly to the direction of the column.

237. Each chief having aligned his platoon, will command Front, and return quickly to his place in column.

238. This disposition being made, the instructor will command:

1. *Left into line, wheel.* 2. March.

239. At the command *march*, briskly repeated by the chiefs of platoon, the front rank man on the left of each platoon will face to the left, and place his breast lightly against the arm of the guide by his side, who stands fast; the platoons will wheel to the left on the

principle of wheels from a halt, and in conformity to what is prescribed No. 194. Each chief will turn to his platoon to observe its movement, and when the marching flank has approached near the line of battle, he will command:

1. *Platoon.* 2. HALT.

240. The command *halt*, will be given when the marching flank of the platoon is three paces from the line of battle.

241. The chief of the second platoon, having halted it, will return to his place as a file closer, passing around the left of his subdivision.

242. The captain having halted the first platoon, will move rapidly to the point at which the right of the company will rest in line of battle, and command:

Right—DRESS.

243. At this command, the two platoons will dress up on the alignment; the front rank man on the right of the leading platoon, who finds himself opposite the instructor established on the direction of the guides, will place his breast lightly against the left arm of this officer. The captain will direct the alignment from the right on the man on the opposite flank of the company.

244. The company being aligned, the captain will command:

FRONT.

245. The instructor seeing the company in line of battle, will command:

Guides—POSTS.

246. At this command, the covering sergeant will cover the captain, and the left guide will return to his place as a file closer.

247. If the column be left in front, and the instructor should wish to form it to the right into line of battle, he will place himself at platoon distance in front of the leading guide, face to him, and rectify, if necessary, the position of the guide beyond; which being executed, he will command:

1. *Right into line wheel.* 2. MARCH.

248. At the command *march*, the front rank man on the right of each platoon will face to the right and place his breast lightly against the left arm of the guide by his side, who stands fast; each platoon will wheel to the right, and will be halted by its chief, when the marching flank has approached near the line of battle; for this purpose, the chief of each platoon will command:

1. *Platoon.* 2. HALT.

249. The command *halt*, will be given when the marching flank of the platoon is three paces from the line of battle. The chief of the second platoon having halted his platoon, will resume his place in the rank of file closers.

250. The captain having halted the first platoon, will move briskly to the point at which the left of the company will rest, and command:

Left—DRESS.

251. At this command, the two platoons will dress up on the alignment; the man on the left of the second platoon, opposite the instructor, will place his breast lightly against the right arm of this officer, and the captain will direct the alignment from the left on the man on the opposite flank of the company.

252. The company being aligned, the captain will command:

FRONT.

253. The instructor will afterwards command:

Guides—Posts.

254. At this command, the captain will move to the right of his company, the covering sergeant will cover him, and the left guide will return to his place as a file closer.

255. The instructor may omit the command *left* or *right dress*, previous to commanding *left* or *right into line, wheel*, unless, after rectifying the position of the guides, it should become necessary to dress the platoons, or one of them, laterally to the right or left.

256. The instructor, before the command *left* (or *right*) *into line, wheel*, will assure himself that the rearmost platoon is at its exact wheeling distance from the one in front. This attention is important, in order to detect negligence on the part of guides in this essential point.

257. If the column be marching right in front, and the instructor should wish to form it into line without halting the column, he will give the commands prescribed No. 238, and move rapidly to platoon distance in front of the leading guide.

258. At the command *march*, briskly repeated by the chiefs of platoon, the left guides will halt short, the instructor, the chiefs of platoon, and the platoons, will conform to what is prescribed No. 239, and following.

259. If the column be in march left in front, this formation will be made according to the same principles, and by inverse means.

260. If the column be marching right in front, and the instructor should wish to form it into line without halting the column, and to march the company in line to the front, he will command:

1. *By platoons left wheel.* 2. March.

261. At the command *march*, briskly repeated by the chiefs of platoon, the left guides will halt: the man next to the left guide in each platoon will mark time: the platoons will wheel to the left, conforming to the principles of the wheel on a fixed pivot. When the right of the platoons shall arrive near the line of battle, the instructor will command:

3. *Forward.* 4. MARCH. 5. *Guide right* (or *left.*)

262. At the fourth command, given at the instant the wheel is completed, all the men of the company will move off together with the step of twenty-eight inches; the captain, the chief of the second platoon, the covering sergeant, and the left guide, will take their positions as in line of battle.

263. At the fifth command, which will be given immediately after the fourth, the captain and covering sergeant, if not already there, will move briskly to the side on which the guide is designated. The non-commissioned officer charged with the direction will move rapidly in front of the guide, and will be assured in his line of march by the instructor, as is prescribed No. 104. That non-commissioned officer will immediately take points on the ground as indicated in the same number. The men will take the touch of elbows to the side of the guide, conforming themselves to the principles of the march in line.

264. The same principles are applicable to a column left in front.

LESSON SIXTH.

Article First.

To break the company into platoons, and to re-form the company.

To break the company into platoons.

265. The company marching in the cadenced step, and supposed to make part of a column, right in front, when the instructor shall wish to cause it to break by platoon, he will give the order to the captain, who will command: 1. *Break into platoons*, and immediately place himself before the centre of the first platoon.

266. At the command *break into platoons*, the first lieutenant will pass quickly around the left to the centre of his platoon, and give the caution: *Mark time.*

267. The captain will then command: 2. *March.*

268. The first platoon will continue to march straight forward; the covering sergeant will move rapidly to the left flank of this platoon (passing by the front rank) as soon as the flank shall be disengaged.

269. At the command *march*, given by the captain, the second platoon will begin to mark time; and its chief will immediately add: 1. *Right oblique;* 2. March. The last command will be given so that this platoon may commence obliquing the instant the rear rank of the first platoon shall have passed. The men will shorten the step in obliquing, so that when the command *forward march* is given, the platoon may have its exact distance.

270. The guide of the second platoon being near the direction of the guide of the first, the chief of the second will command *Forward*, and add March, the

instant that the guide of his platoon shall cover the guide of the first.

271. In a column, left in front, the company will break into platoons by inverse means, applying to the first platoon all that has been prescribed for the second, and reciprocally.

272. In this case, the left guide of the company will shift to the right flank of the second platoon, and the covering sergeant will remain on the right of the first.

To re-form the company.

273. The column, by platoon, being in march, right in front, when the instructor shall wish to cause it to form company, he will give the order to the captain, who will command: *Form company.*

274. Having given this command, the captain will immediately add: 1. *First platoon;* 2. *Right oblique.*

275. The chief of the second platoon will caution it to continue to march straight forward.

276. The captain will then command: 3. MARCH.

277. At this command, repeated by the chief of the second, the first platoon will oblique to the right, in order to unmask the second; the covering sergeant, on the left of the first platoon, will return to the right of the company, passing by the front rank.

278. When the first platoon shall have nearly unmasked the second, the captain will command: 1. *Mark time,* and at the instant the unmasking shall be complete, he will add: 2. MARCH. The first platoon will then cease to oblique, and mark time.

279. In the mean time the second platoon will have continued to march straight forward, and when it shall be nearly up with the first, the captain will command *Forward,* and at the instant the two platoons shall unite, add MARCH; the first platoon will then cease to mark time.

280. In a column left in front, the same movement

will be executed by inverse means, the chief of the second platoon giving the command *Forward*, and the captain adding the command MARCH, when the platoons are united.

281. The guide of the second platoon, on its right, will pass to its left flank the moment the platoon begins to oblique; the guide of the first, on its right, remaining on that flank of the platoon.

282. The instructor will also sometimes cause the company to break and re-form, by platoon, by his own direct commands. In this case, he will give the general commands prescribed for the captain above: 1. *Break into platoons;* 2. MARCH; and 1. *Form company;* 2. MARCH.

283. If, in breaking the company into platoons, the subdivision that breaks off should mark time too long, it might, in a column of many subdivisions, arrest the march of the following one, which would cause a lengthening of the column, and a loss of distances.

ARTICLE SECOND.

Being in column, to break files to the rear, and to cause them to re-enter into line.

289. The company being in march, and supposed to constitute a subdivision of a column, right (or left) in front, when the instructor shall wish to cause files to break off he will give the order to the captain, who will immediately turn to his company, and command:

1. *Two files from left* (or *right*) *to rear.* 2. MARCH.

290. At the command *march*, the two files on the left (or right) of the company will mark time, the others will continue to march straight forward; the two rear rank men of these files will, as soon the rear rank of the company shall clear them, move to the

right by advancing the outer shoulder; the odd number will place himself behind the third file from that flank, the even number behind the fourth, passing for this purpose behind the odd number; the two front rank men will, in like manner, move to the right when the rear rank of the company shall clear them, the odd number will place himself behind the first file, the even number behind the second file, passing for this purpose behind the odd number. If the files are broken from the right, the men will move to the left, advancing the outer shoulder, the even number of the rear rank will place himself behind the third file, the odd number of the same rank behind the fourth; the even number of the front rank behind the first file, the odd number of the same rank behind the second, the odd numbers for this purpose passing behind the even numbers. The men will be careful not to lose their distances and to keep aligned.

291. If the instructor should still wish to break two files from the same side, he will give the order to the captain, who will proceed as above directed.

292. At the command *march*, given by the captain, the files already broken, advancing a little the outer shoulder, will gain the space of two files to the right, if the files are broken from the left, and to the left, if the files are broken from the right, shortening, at the same time, the step, in order to make room between themselves and the rear rank of the company for the files last ordered to the rear; the latter will break by the same commands and in the same manner as the first. The men who double should increase the length of the step in order to prevent distances from being lost.

293. The instructor may thus diminish the front of a company by breaking off successive groups of two files, but the new files must always be broken from the same side.

294. The instructor, wishing to cause files broken

off to return into line, will give the order to the captain, who will immediately command:

1. *Two files into line.* 2. MARCH.

295. At the command *march*, the first two files of those marching by the flank will return briskly into line, and the others will gain the space of two files by advancing the inner shoulder towards the flank to which they belong.

296. The captain will turn to his company, to watch the observance of the principles which have just been prescribed.

297. The instructor having caused groups of two files to break one after another, and to return again into line, will afterwards cause two or three groups to break together, and for this purpose, will command: *Four or six files from left* (or *right*) *to rear;* MARCH. The files designated will mark time; each rank will advance a little the outer shoulder as soon as the rear rank of the company shall clear it, will oblique at once, and each group will place itself behind the four neighboring files. and in the same manner, as if the movement had been executed group by group, taking care that the distances are preserved.

298. The instructor will next order the captain to cause two or three groups to be brought into line at once, who turning to the company, will command:

Four or six files into line—MARCH.

299. At the command *march*, the files designated will advance the inner shoulder, move up and form on the flank of the company by the shortest lines.

300. As often as the files shall break off to the rear, the guide on that flank will gradually close on the nearest front rank man remaining in line, and he will also open out to make room for files ordered into line.

301. The files which march in the rear are disposed

in the following order: the left files as if the company was marching by the right flank, and the right files as if the company was marching by the left flank. Consequently, whenever there is on the right or left of a subdivision, a file which does not belong to a group, it will be broken singly.

302. It is necessary to the preservation of distances in column that the men should be habituated in the schools of detail to execute the movements of this article with precision.

303. If the new files broken off do not step well to the left or right in obliquing; if, when files are ordered into line, they do not move up with promptitude and precision, in either case the following files will be arrested in their march, and thereby cause the column to be lengthened out.

304. The instructor will place himself on the flank from which the files are broken, to assure himself of the exact observance of the principles.

305. Files will only be broken off from the side of direction, in order that the whole company may easily pass from the front to the flank march.

Article Third.

To march the column in route, and to execute the movements incidental thereto.

306. The swiftness of the route step will be one hundred and ten steps in a minute; this swiftness will be habitually maintained in column in route, when the roads and ground may permit.

307. The company being at a halt, and supposed to constitute a subdivision of a column, when the instructor shall wish to cause it to march in the route step, he will command:

1. *Column, forward.* 2. *Guide left* (or *right*).
3. *Route step.* 4. March.

308. At the command *march*, repeated by the captain, the two ranks will step off together; the rear rank will take, in marching, by shortening a few steps, a distance of one pace (twenty-eight inches) from the rank preceding, which distance will be computed from the breasts of the men in the rear rank, to the knapsacks of the men in the front rank. The men, without further command, will immediately carry their arms *at will*, as indicated in the school of the soldier, No. 219. They will no longer be required to march in the cadenced pace, or with the same foot, or to remain silent. The files will march at ease; but care will be taken to prevent the ranks from intermixing, the front rank from getting in advance of the guides, and the rear rank from opening to too great a distance.

309. The company marching in the route step, the instructor will cause it to change direction, which will be executed without formal commands, on a simple caution from the captain; the rear rank will come up to change direction in the same manner as the front rank. Each rank will conform itself, although in the route step, to the principles which have been prescribed for the change in closed ranks, with this difference only: that the pivot man, instead of taking steps of nine, will take steps of fourteen inches, in order to clear the wheeling point.

310. The company marching in the route step, to cause it to pass to the cadenced step, the instructor will first order pieces to be brought to the right shoulder, and then command:

1. *Quick time.* 2. MARCH.

311. At the command *march*, the men will resume the cadenced step, and will close so as to leave a distance of sixteen inches between each rank.

312. The company marching in the cadenced pace,

the instructor, to cause it to take the route step, will command:

1. *Route step.* 2. MARCH.

313. At the command *march*, the front rank will continue the step of twenty-eight inches, the rear rank will take, by gradually shortening the step, the distance of twenty-eight inches from the front rank; the men will carry their arms at will.

314. If the company be marching in the route step, and the instructor should suppose the necessity of marching by flank in the same direction, he will command:

1. *Company by the right* (or *left*) *flank.* 2. *By file left* (or *right*). 3. MARCH.

315. At the command *march*, the company will face to the right (or left) in marching, the captain will place himself by the side of the guide who conducts the leading flank; this guide will wheel immediately to the left or right; all the files will come in succession to wheel on the same spot as the guide; if there be files broken off to the rear, they will by wheeling, regain their respective places, and follow the movement of the company.

316. The instructor having caused the company to be again formed into line, will exercise it in increasing and diminishing front, by platoon, which will be executed by the same commands, and the same means, as if the company were marching in the cadenced step. When the company breaks into platoons, the chief of each will move to the flank of his platoon, and will take the place of the guide, who will step back into the rear rank.

317. The company being in column, by platoon, and supposed to march in the route step, the instructor can cause the front to be diminished and increased, by

section, if the platoons have a front of twelve files or more.

318. The movement of diminishing and increasing front, by section, will be executed according to the principles indicated for the same movements by platoon. The right sections of platoons will be commanded by the captain and first lieutenant, respectively; the left sections, by the two next subalterns in rank, or, in their absence, by sergeants.

319. The instructor wishing to diminish by section, will give the order to the captain, who will command:

1. *Break into sections.* 2. MARCH.

320. As soon as the platoons shall be broken, each chief of section will place himself on its directing flank in the front rank, the guides who will be thus displaced, will fall back into the rear rank; the file-closers will close up to within one pace of this rank.

321. Platoons will be broken into sections only in the column in route, the movement will never be executed in the manœuvres, whatever may be the front of the company.

322. When the instructor shall wish to re-form platoons, he will give the order to the captain, who will command:

1. *Form platoon.* 2. MARCH.

323. At the first command, each chief of section will place himself before its centre, and the guides will pass into the front rank. At the command *march*, the movement will be executed as has been prescribed for forming company. The moment the platoons are formed, the chiefs of the left sections will return to their places as file-closers.

324. The instructor will also cause to be executed the diminishing and increasing front by files, as prescribed in the preceding article, and in the same man-

ner as if marching in the cadenced step. When the company is broken into sections, the subdivisions must not be reduced to front of less than six files, not counting the chief of the section.

325. The company being broken by platoon, or by section, the instructor will cause it, marching in the route step, to march by the flank in the same direction, by the commands and the means indicated, Nos. 314 and 315. The moment the subdivisions shall face to the right (or left,) the first file of each will wheel to the left (or right,) in marching, to prolong the direction, and to unite with the rear file of the subdivision immediately preceding. The file-closers will take their habitual places in the march by the flank, before the union of the subdivisions.

326. If the company be marching by the right flank, and the instructor should wish to undouble the files, which might sometimes be found necessary, he will inform the captain, who, after causing the cadenced step to be resumed, and arms to be shouldered or supported, will command:

1. *In two ranks, undouble files.* 2. MARCH.

327. At the second command, the odd numbers will continue to march straight forward, the even numbers will shorten the step, and obliquing to the left will place themselves promptly behind the odd numbers; the rear rank will gain a step to the left so as to retake the touch of elbows on the side of the front rank.

328. If the company be marching by the left flank, it will be the even numbers who will continue to march forward, and the odd numbers who will undouble.

329. If the instructor should wish to double the files, he will give the order to the captain, who will command:

1. *In four ranks, double files.* 2. MARCH.

330. At the command *march*, the files will double in the manner as explained, when the company faces by the right or the left flank. The instructor will afterwards cause the route step to be resumed.

331. The various movements prescribed in this lesson may be executed in double quick time. The men will be brought by degrees to pass over at this gait about eleven hundred yards in seven minutes.

332. When the company marching in the route step shall halt, the rear rank will close up at the command *halt*, and the whole will shoulder arms.

333. Marching in the route step, the men will be permitted to carry their pieces in the manner they shall find most convenient, paying attention only to holding the muzzles up, so as to avoid accidents.

Article Fourth.

Countermarch.

334. The company being at a halt, and supposed to constitute a part of a column, right in front, when the instructor shall wish to cause it to countermarch, he will command:

1. *Countermarch.* 2. *Company, right*—Face. 3. *By file left.* 4. March.

335. At the second command, the company will face to the right, the two guides to the right about; the captain will go to the right of his company and cause two files to break to the rear, and then place himself by the side of the front rank man, to conduct him.

336. At the command *march*, both guides will stand fast; the company will step off smartly; the first file, conducted by the captain, will wheel around the right guide, and direct its march along the front rank so as to arrive behind, and two paces from the left guide;

each file will come in succession to wheel on the same ground around the right guide; the leading file having arrived at a point opposite to the left guide, the captain will command:

1. *Company.* 2. HALT. 3. FRONT. 4. *Right*—DRESS.

337. The first command will be given at *four* paces from the point where the leading file is to rest.

338. At the second command, the company will halt.

339. At the third, it will face to the front.

340. At the fourth, the company will dress by the right; the captain will step two paces outside of the left guide, now on the right, and direct the alignment, so that the front rank may be enclosed between the two guides; the company being aligned, he will command FRONT, and place himself before the centre of the company as if in column; the guides, passing along the front rank, will shift to their proper places, on the right and left of that rank.

341. In a column by platoon, the countermarch will be executed by the same commands, and according to the same principles; the guide of each platoon will face about, and its chief will place himself by the side of the file on the right, to conduct it.

342. In a column, left in front, the countermarch will be executed by inverse commands and means, but according to the same principles. Thus, the movement will be made by the right flank of subdivisions, if the right be in front, and by the left flank, if the left be in front; in both cases the subdivisions will wheel by file to the side of the front rank.

Article Fifth.

Being in column by platoon, to form on the right (or left) into line of battle.

343. The column by platoon, right in front, being in march, the instructor, wishing to form it on the right into line of battle, will command:

1. *On the right into line.* 2. *Guide right.*

344. At the second command, the guide of each platoon will shift quickly to its right flank, and the men will touch elbows to the right; the column will continue to march straight forward.

345. The instructor having given the second command, will move briskly to the point at which the right of the company ought to rest in line, and place himself facing the point of direction to the left which he will choose.

346. The line of battle ought to be so chosen that the guide of each platoon, after having turned to the right, may have, at least, ten paces to take before arriving upon that line.

347. The head of the column being nearly opposite to the instructor, the chief of the first platoon will command; 1. *Right turn;* and when exactly opposite to that point, he will add:

2. March.

348. At the command *march*, the first platoon will turn to the right, in conformity with the principles prescribed in the school of the soldier, No. 402. Its guide will so direct his march as to bring the front rank man, next on his left, opposite to the instructor; the chief of the platoon will march before its centre;

and when its guide shall be near the line of battle, he will command:

1. *Platoon.* 2. HALT.

349. At the command *halt*, which will be given at the instant the right of the platoon shall arrive at the distance of three paces from the line of battle, the platoon will halt; the files not yet in line, will come up promptly. The guide will throw himself on the line of battle, opposite to one of the three left files of his platoon; he will face to the instructor, who will align him on the point of direction to the left. The chief of platoon having, at the same time, gone to the point where the right of the company is to rest, will, as soon as he sees all the files of the platoon in line, command:

Right—DRESS.

350. At this, the first platoon will align itself; the front rank man, who finds himself opposite to the guide, will rest his breast lightly against the right arm of this guide, and the chief of the platoon, from the right, will direct the alignment on this man.

351. The second platoon will continue to march straight forward, until its guide shall arrive opposite to the left file of the first; it will then turn to the right at the command of its chief, and march towards the line of battle, its guide directing himself on the left file of the first platoon.

352. The guide having arrived at the distance of three paces from the line of battle, this platoon will be halted, as prescribed for the first; at the instant it halts, its guide will spring on the line of battle, opposite to one of the three left files of his platoon, and will be assured in his position by the instructor.

353. The chief of the second platoon, seeing all its files in line, and its guide established on the direction, will command:

Right—DRESS.

354. Having given this command, he will return to his place as a file closer, passing around the left; the second platoon will dress up on the alignment of the first, and when established, the captain will command:

FRONT.

355. The movement ended, the instructor will command:

Guides—POSTS.

356. At this command, the two guides will return to their places in line of battle.

357. A column, by platoon, left in front, will form on the left into line of battle, according to the same principles, and, by inverse means, applying to the second platoon what is prescribed for the first, and reciprocally. The chief of the second platoon having aligned it, from the point of *appui*, (the left,) will retire to his place as a file closer. The captain having halted the first platoon three paces behind the line of battle, will go to the same point to align this platoon, and then command: FRONT. At the command, *guides—posts*, given by the instructor, the captain will shift to his proper flank, and the guides take their places in the line of battle.

358. When the companies of a regiment are to be exercised, at the same time, in the school of the company, the colonel will indicate the lesson or lessons they are severally to execute. The whole will commence by a bugle signal, and terminate in like manner.

Formation of a company from two ranks into single rank, and reciprocally.

359. The company being formed into two ranks in the manner indicated No. 8, school of the soldier, and supposed to make part of a column, right or left in

front, when the instructor shall wish to form it into single rank, he will command:

1. *In one rank, form company.* 2. MARCH.

360. At the first command, the right guide will face to the right.

361. At the command *march*, the right guide will step off and march in the prolongation of the front rank.

362. The first file will step off at the same time with the guide; the front rank man will turn to the right at the first step, follow the guide, and be himself followed by the rear rank man of his file, who will come to turn on the same spot where he had turned. The second file, and successively all the other files, will step off as has been prescribed for the first, the front rank man of each file following immediately the rear rank man of the file next on his right. The captain will superintend the movement, and when the last man shall have stepped off, he will halt the company, and face it to the front.

363. The file closers, will take their places in line of battle, two paces in the rear of the rank.

364. The company being in single rank, when the instructor shall wish to form it into two ranks, he will command:

1. *In two ranks, form company.* 2. *Company, right*—FACE. 3. MARCH.

365. At the second command the company will face to the right: the right guide and the man on the right will remain faced to the front.

366. At the command *march*, the men who have faced to the right, will step off, and form files in the following manner: the second man in the rank will place himself behind the first to form the first file; the third will place himself by the side of the first in

the front rank; the fourth behind the third in the rear rank. All the others will, in like manner, place themselves, alternately in the front and rear rank, and will thus form files of two men, on the left of those already formed.

367. The formations above described will be habitually executed by the right of companies; but when the instructor shall wish to have them executed by the left, he will face the company *about*, and post the guides in the rear rank.

368. The formation will then be executed by the same commands, and according to the same principles as by the front rank; the movement commencing with the left file, now become the right, and in each file by the rear rank man, now become the front; the left guide will conform to what has been prescribed for the right.

369. The formation ended, the instructor will face the company to its proper front.

370. When a battalion in line has to execute either of the formations above described, the colonel will cause it to break to the rear by the right or left of companies, and will then give the commands just prescribed for the instructor. Each company will execute the movement as if acting singly.

Formation of a company from two ranks into four, and reciprocally, at a halt, and in march.

371. The company being formed in two ranks, at a halt, and supposed to form part of a column right in front, when the instructor shall wish to form it into four ranks, he will command:

1. *In four ranks, form company.* 2. *Company, left*—FACE. 3. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

372. At the second command, the left guide will remain faced to the front, the company will face to the

left: the rear rank will gain the distance of one pace from the front rank by a side step to the left and rear, and the men will form into four ranks as prescribed in the school of the soldier.

373. At the command *march*, the first file of four men will reface to the front without undoubling. All the other files of four will step off, and closing successively to about five inches of the preceding file, will halt, and immediately face to the front, the men remaining doubled.

374. The file-closers will take their new places in line of battle, at two paces in rear of the fourth rank.

375. The captain will superintend the movement.

376. The company being in four ranks, when the instructor shall wish to form it into two ranks, he will command:

1. *In two ranks, form company.* 2. *Company, right*—FACE. 3. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

377. At the second command the left guide will stand fast, the company will face to the right.

378. At the command *march*, the right guide will step off and march in the prolongation of the front rank. The leading file of four men will step off at the same time, the other files standing fast; the second file will step off when there shall be between it and the first space sufficient to form into two ranks. The following files will execute successively what has been prescribed for the second. As soon as the last file shall have its distance, the instructor will command:

1. *Company.* 2. HALT. 3. FRONT.

379. At the command *front*, the company will face to the front, and the files will undouble.

380. The company being formed in two ranks, and

marching to the front, when the instructor shall wish to form it into four ranks, he will command:

1. *In four ranks, form company.* 2. *By the left, double files.* 3. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

381. At the command *march*, the left guide and the left file of the company will continue to march straight to the front: the company will make a half face to the left, the odd numbers placing themselves behind the even numbers. The even numbers of the rear rank will shorten their steps a little, to permit the odd numbers of the front rank to get between them and the even numbers of that rank. The files thus formed of fours, except the left file, will continue to march obliquely, lengthening their steps slightly, so as to keep constantly abreast of the guide; each file will close successively on the file next on its left, and when at the proper distance from that file, will face to the front by a half face to the right, and take the touch of elbows to the left.

382. The company being in march to the front in four ranks, when the instructor shall wish to form it into two ranks, he will command:

1. *In two ranks, form company.* 2. *By the right, undouble files.* 3. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

383. At the command *march*, the left guide and the left file of the company will continue to march straight to the front; the company will make a half face to the right and march obliquely, lengthening the step a little, in order to keep, as near as possible, abreast of the guide. As soon as the second file from the left shall have gained to the right the interval necessary for the left file to form into two ranks, the second file will face to the front by a half face to the left and march straight forward; the left file will immediately form into two ranks, and

take the touch of elbows to the left. Each file will execute successively, what has just been prescribed for the file next to the left, and each file will form into two ranks when the file next on its right has obliqued the required distance and faced to the front.

384. If the company be supposed to make part of a column, left in front, these different movements will be executed according to the same principles and by inverse means, substituting the indication *left* for *right*.

END OF THE SCHOOL OF THE COMPANY.

MANUAL OF THE SWORD OR SABRE, FOR OFFICERS.

POSITION OF THE SWORD OR SABRE, UNDER ARMS.

The carry. The gripe is in the right hand, which will be supported against the right hip, the back of the blade against the shoulder.

TO SALUTE WITH THE SWORD OR SABRE.

Three times (or *pauses*).

One. At the distance of six paces from the person to be saluted, raise the sword or sabre perpendicularly, the point up, the flat of the blade opposite to the right eye, the guard at the height of the shoulder, the elbow supported on the body.

Two. Drop the point of the sword or sabre by extending the arm, so that the right hand may be brought to the side of the right thigh, and remain in that position until the person to whom the salute is rendered shall be passed, or shall have passed, six paces.

Three. Raise the sword or sabre smartly, and place the back of the blade against the right shoulder.

COLOR-SALUTE.

In the ranks, the color-bearer, whether at a halt or in march, will always carry the heel of the color-lance supported at the right hip, the right hand generally placed on the lance at the height of the shoulder, to hold it steady. When the color has to render honors, the color-bearer will salute as follows:

At the distance of six paces slip the right hand along the lance to the height of the eye; lower the lance by straightening the arm to its full extent, the heel of the lance remaining at the hip, and bring back the lance to the habitual position when the person saluted shall be passed, or shall have passed, six paces.

MANUAL

FOR RELIEVING SENTINELS.

Arms—PORT.

One time and one motion.

Throw the piece diagonally across the body, the lock to the front, seize it smartly at the same instant with both hands, the right at the handle, the left at the lower band, the two thumbs pointing towards the muzzle, the barrel sloping upwards and crossing opposite the point of the left shoulder, the butt proportionally lowered. The palm of the right hand will be above, and that of the left under the piece, the nails

of both hands next to the body, to which the elbows will be closed.

Shoulder—ARMS.

One time and two motions.

(*First motion.*) Bring the piece smartly to the right shoulder, placing the right hand as in the position of shoulder arms, slip the left hand to the height of the shoulder, the fingers extended.

(*Second motion.*) Drop the left hand smartly by the side.

Being on parade and at order arms, if it be wished to give the men rest, the command will be:

Parade—REST.

At the command *rest*, turn the piece on the heel of the butt, the barrel to the left, the muzzle in front of the centre of the body; seize it at the same time with the left hand just above, and with the right at the upper band; carry the right foot six inches to the rear, the left knee slightly bent.

RIFLE AND LIGHT INFANTRY TACTICS.

TITLE FOURTH.

SCHOOL OF THE BATTALION.

Formation of the Battalion.

1. Every colonel will labor to habituate his battalion to form line of battle, by night as well as by day, with the greatest possible promptitude.

2. The color-company will generally be designated as the directing company. That, as soon as formed, will be placed on the direction the colonel may have determined for the line of battle. The other companies will form on it, to the right and left, on the principles of successive formations which will be herein prescribed.

3. The color-bearer may have received the color from the hands of the colonel; but if there be daylight, and time, the color will be produced with due solemnity.

Composition and march of the color-escort.

4. When the battalion turns out under arms, and the color is wanted, a company, other than that of the color, will be put in march to receive and escort it.

5. The march will be in the following order, in quick time, and without music: the field music, followed by the band; the escort in column by platoon,

right in front, with arms on the right shoulder, and the color-bearer between the platoons.

6. Arrived in front of the tent or quarters of the colonel, the escort will form line, the field music and band on the right, and arms will be brought to a shoulder.

7. The moment the escort is in line, the color-bearer preceded by the first lieutenant, and followed by a sergeant of the escort, will go to receive the color.

8. When the color-bearer shall come out, followed by the lieutenant and sergeant, he will halt before the entrance; the escort will present arms, and the field music will sound *to the color*.

9. After some twenty seconds, the captain will cause the sound to cease, arms to be shouldered, and then break by platoon into column; the color-bearer will place himself between the platoons, and the lieutenant and sergeant will resume their posts.

10. The escort will march back to the battalion to the sound of music in quick time, and in the same order as above, the guide on the right. The march will be so conducted that when the escort arrives at one hundred and fifty paces in front of the right of the battalion, the direction of the march will be parallel to its front, and when the color arrives nearly opposite its place in line, the column will change direction to the left, and the right guide will direct himself on the centre of the battalion.

Honors paid to the color.

11. Arrived at the distance of twenty paces from the battalion, the escort will halt, and the music cease; the colonel will place himself six paces before the centre of the battalion, the color-bearer will approach the colonel, by the front, in quick time; when at the distance of ten paces, he will halt; the colonel will cause arms to be presented, and *to the color* to be

sounded, which being executed, the color-bearer will take his place in the front rank of the color-guard, and the battalion, by command, shoulder arms.

12. The escort, field music, and band, will return in quick time to their several places in line of battle, marching by the rear of the battalion.

13. The color will be escorted back to the colonel's tent or quarters in the above order.

PART FIRST.

Opening and closing ranks, and the execution of the different fires.

Article First.

To open and to close ranks.

22. The colonel, wishing the ranks to be opened, will command:

1. *Prepare to open ranks.*

23. At this command, the lieutenant colonel and major will place themselves on the right of the battalion, the first on the flank of the file-closers, and the second four paces from the front rank of the battalion.

24. These dispositions being made, the colonel will command:

2. *To the rear, open order.* 3. March.

25. At the second command, the covering sergeants, and the sergeant on the left of the battalion, will place themselves four paces in rear of the front rank, and opposite their places in line of battle, in order to mark the new alignment of the rear rank; they will be aligned by the major on the left sergeant of the battalion, who will be careful to place himself exactly four

paces in rear of the front rank, and to hold his piece between the eyes, erect and inverted, the better to indicate to the major the direction to be given to the covering sergeants.

26. At the command *march*, the rear rank and the file-closers will step to the rear without counting steps; the men will pass a little in rear of the line traced for this rank, halt, and dress forward on the covering sergeants, who will align correctly the men of their respective companies.

27. The file-closers will fall back and preserve the distance of two paces from the rear rank, glancing eyes to the right; the lieutenant colonel will, from the right, align them on the file-closer of the left, who, having placed himself accurately two paces from the rear rank, will invert his piece, and hold it up erect between his eyes, the better to be seen by the lieutenant colonel.

28. The colonel, seeing the ranks aligned, will command:

4. FRONT.

At this command, the lieutenant colonel, major, and the left sergeant, will retake their places in line of battle.

29. The colonel will cause the ranks to be closed by the commands prescribed for the instructor in the the school of the company, No. 28.

ARTICLE THIRD.

The firings.

32. The colonel will cause to be executed the fire by company, the fire by wing, the fire by battalion, the fire by file, and the fire by rank, by the commands to be herein indicated.

33. The fire by company and the fire by file will always be direct; the fire by battalion, the fire by

wing, and the fire by rank, may either be direct or oblique.

34. When the fire ought to be oblique, the colonel will give, at every round, the caution *right* (or *left*) *oblique*, between the commands *ready* and *aim*.

35. The fire by company will be executed alternately by the right and left companies of each division, as if the division were alone. The right company will fire first; the captain of the left will not give his first command till he shall see one or two pieces at a ready in the right company; the captain of the latter, after the first discharge, will observe the same rule in respect to the left company; and the fire will thus be continued alternately.

36. The colonel will observe the same rule in the firing by wing.

37. The fire by file will commence in all the companies at once, and will be executed as has been prescribed in the school of the company, No. 55, and following. The fire by rank will be executed by each rank alternately, as has been prescribed in school of the company, No. 58, and following.

38. The color-guard will not fire, but reserve itself for the defence of the color.

The fire by company.

39. The colonel, wishing the fire by company to be executed, will command:

1. *Fire by company.* 2. *Commence firing.*

40. At the first command, the captains and covering sergeants will take the positions indicated in the school of the company, No. 49.

41. The color and its guard will step back at the same time, so as to bring the front rank of the guard in a line with the rear rank of the battalion. *This rule is general for all the different firings.*

42. At the second command, the odd numbered companies will commence to fire; their captains will each give the commands prescribed in the school of the company, No. 50, observing to precede the command *company* by that of *first, third, fifth,* or *seventh,* according to the number of each.

43. The captains of the even numbered companies will give, in their turn, the same commands, observing to precede them by the number of their respective companies.

44. In order that the odd numbered companies may not all fire at once, their captains will observe, but only for the first discharge, to give the command *fire* one after another; thus, the captain of the third company will not give the command *fire* until he has heard the fire of the first company; the captain of the fifth will observe the same rule with respect to the third, and the captain of the seventh the same rule with respect to the fifth.

45. The colonel will cause the fire to cease by the sound to *cease firing;* at this sound the men will execute what is prescribed in the school of the company, No. 63; at the sound for officers to take their places after firing, the captains, covering sergeants, and color-guard, will promptly resume their places in line of battle. *This rule is general for all the firings.*

The fire by wing.

46. When the colonel shall wish this fire to be executed, he will command:

1. *Fire by wing.* 2. *Right wing.* 3. READY. 4. AIM. 5. FIRE. 6. LOAD.

47. The colonel will cause the wings to fire alternately, and he will recommence the fire by the commands, 1. *Right wing;* 2. AIM; 3. FIRE; 4. LOAD. 1. *Left wing;* 2. AIM; 3. FIRE; 4. LOAD; in conforming to what is prescribed, No. 35.

The fire by battalion.

48. The colonel will cause this fire to be executed by the commands last prescribed, substituting for the first two, 1. *Fire by battalion;* 2. *Battalion.*

The fire by file.

49. To cause this to be executed, the colonel will command:

1. *Fire by file.* 2. *Battalion.* 3. READY. 4. *Commence firing.*

50. At the fourth command, the fire will commence on the right of each company, as prescribed in the school of the company, No. 57. The colonel may, if he thinks proper, cause the fire to commence on the right of each platoon.

The fire by rank.

51. To cause this fire to be executed, the colonel will command:

1. *Fire by rank.* 2. *Battalion.* 3. READY. 4. *Rear rank.* 5. AIM. 6. FIRE. 7. LOAD.

52. This fire will be executed as has been explained in the school of the company, No. 59, in following the progression prescribed for the two ranks which should fire alternately.

To fire by the rear rank.

53. When the colonel shall wish the battalion to fire to the rear, he will command:

1. *Face by the rear rank.* 2. *Battalion.* 3. *About*—FACE.

54. At the first command, the captains, covering ser-

geants and file-closers, will execute what has been prescribed in the school of the company; the color-bearer will pass into the rear rank, and for this purpose, the corporal of his file will step before the corporal next on his right to let the color-bearer pass, and will then take his place in the front rank; the lieutenant colonel, adjutant, major, sergeant major, and the music will place themselves before the front rank, and face to the rear, each opposite his place in the line of battle—the first two passing around the right, and the others around the left of the battalion.

55. At the third command, the battalion will face about; the captains and covering sergeants observing what is prescribed in the school of the company, No. 70.

56. The battalion facing thus by the rear rank, the colonel will cause it to execute the different fires by the same commands as if it were faced by the front rank.

61. The colonel, after firing to the rear, wishing to face the battalion to its proper front, will command:

1. *Face by the front rank.* 2. *Battalion.* 3. *About*—FACE.

62. At these commands, the battalion will return to its proper front by the means prescribed, Nos. 54 and 55.

63. The fire by file being that most used in war, the colonel will give it the preference in the preparatory exercises, in order that the battalion may be brought to execute it with the greatest possible regularity.

PART SECOND.

Different modes of passing from the order in battle to the order in column.

Article First.

To break to the right or the left into column.

68. Lines of battle will habitually break into column by company; they may also break by division or by platoon.

69. It is here supposed that the colonel wishes to break by company to the right, he willl command:

1. *By company, right wheel.* 2. March (or *double quick*—March.)

70. At the first command, each captain will place himself rapidly before the centre of his company, and caution it that it has to wheel to the right; each covering sergeant will replace his captain in the front rank.

71. At the command *march*, each company will break to the right, according to the principles prescribed in the school of the company, No. 173; each captain will conform himself to what is prescribed for the chiefs of platoon; the left guide, as soon as he can pass, will place himself on the left of the front rank to conduct the marching flank, and when he shall have approached near to the perpendicular, the captain will command: 1. *Such company:* 2. Halt.

72. At the second command, which will be given at the instant the left guide shall be at the distance of three paces from the perpendicular, the company will halt; the guide will advance and place his left

arm lightly against the breast of the captain, who will establish him on the alignment of the man who has faced to the right; the covering sergeant will place himself correctly on the alignment on the right of that man; which being executed, the captain will align his company by the left, command FRONT, and place himself two paces before its centre.

73. The captains having commanded FRONT, the guides, although some of them may not be in the direction of the preceding guides, will stand fast, in order that the error of a company that has wheeled too much or too little may not be propagated; the guides not in the direction will readily come into it when the column is put in march.

74. A battalion in line of battle will break into column by company to the left, according to the same principles and by inverse means.

*80. When the colonel shall wish to move the column forward without halting it, he will caution the battalion to that effect, and when the wheel is nearly completed, command:

3. *Forward.* 4. MARCH. 5. *Guide left.*

84. If the battalion be marching in line of battle, the colonel will cause it to wheel to the right or left, by the same commands and the same means; but he should previously caution the battalion that it is to continue the march.

86. When a battalion has to prolong itself in column towards the right or left, or has to direct its march in column perpendicularly or diagonally in front, or in rear of either flank, the colonel will cause it to break by company to the right or left, as has just been prescribed; but when the line breaks to the right, in order to march towards the left, or reverse, the colonel will command: *Break to the right to march to the left,*

* In this case the captains will remain in front of their companies

or *break to the left to march to the right*, before giving the command, *by company, right* (or *left*) *wheel*. As soon as the battalion is broken, the lieutenant-colonel will place a marker abreast with the right guide of the leading company. The instant the column is put in motion, this company will wheel to the left (or right) march ten paces to the front without changing the guide, and wheel again to the left (or right.) The second wheel being completed, the captain will immediately command *guide left* (or *right.*) The guide of this company will march in a direction parallel to the guides of the column. The lieutenant-colonel will be careful to place a second marker at the point where the first company is to change direction the second time.

Article Second.

To break to the rear, by the right or left, into column, and advance or retire by the right or left of companies.

87. When the colonel shall wish to cause the battalion to break to the rear, by the right, into column by company, he will command:

1. *By the right of companies to the rear into column.* 2. *Battalion right*—Face. 3. March (or *double quick*—March.)

88. At the first command, each captain will place himself before the centre of his company, and caution it to face to the right; the covering sergeants will step into the front rank.

89. At the second command, the battalion will face to the right; each captain will hasten to the right of his company, and break two files to the rear; the first file will break the whole depth of the two ranks; the

second file less; which being executed, the captain will place himself so that his breast may touch lightly the left arm of the front rank man of the last file in the compay next on the right of his own. The captain of the right company will place himself as if there were a company on his right, and will align himself on the other captains. The covering sergeant of each company will break to the rear with the right files, and place himself before the front rank of the first file, to conduct him.

90. At the command *march*, the first file of each company will wheel to the right; the covering sergeant, placed before this file, will conduct it perpendicularly to the rear. The other files will come successively to wheel on the same spot. The captains will stand fast, see their companies file past, and at the instant the last file shall have wheeled, each captain will command:

1. *Such company.* 2. HALT. 3. FRONT. 4. *Left*—DRESS.

91. At the instant the company faces to the front, its left guide will place himself so that his left arm may touch lightly the breast of his captain.

92. At the fourth command, the company will align itself on its left guide, the captain so directing it, that the new alignment may be perpendicular to that which the company had occupied in line of battle, and, the better to judge this, he will step back two paces, from the flank.

93. The company being aligned, the captain will command: FRONT, and take his place before its centre.

94. The battalion marching in the line of battle, when the colonel shall wish to break into column by company, to the rear, by the right, he will command:

1. *By the right of companies to the rear into column.* 2. *Battalion, by the right flank.* 3. MARCH, (or *double quick*—MARCH.)

95. At the first command, each captain will step briskly in front of the centre of his company, and caution it to face *by the right flank.*

96. At the command *march*, the battalion will face to the right; each captain will move rapidly to the right of his company and cause it to break to the right; the first file of each company will wheel to the right, and the covering sergeant placed in front of this file will conduct it perpendicularly to the rear; the other files will wheel successively at the same place as the first. The captains will see their companies file past them; when the last files have wheeled, the colonel will command:

3. *Battalion, by the left flank*—MARCH. 4. *Guide left.*

97. At the command *march*, the companies will face to the left, and march in column in the new direction. The captains will place themselves in front of the centres of their respective companies.

98. To break to the rear by the left, the colonel will give the same commands as in the case of breaking to the rear by the right, substituting the indication *left* for that of *right.*

102. The battalion may be broken by division to the rear, by the right or left, in like manner.

105. If the battalion be in line and at a halt, and the colonel should wish to advance or retire by the right of companies, he will command:

1. *By the right of companies to the front* (or *rear*). 2. *Battalion right*—FACE. 3. MARCH, (or *double quick*—MARCH). 4. *Guide right*, (*left*) *or* (*centre*).

106. At the first command, each captain will move rapidly two paces in front of the centre of his company, and caution it to face to the right; the covering sergeants will replace the captains in the front rank.

107. At the second command, the battalion will face to the right, and each captain moving quickly to the

right of his company will cause files to break to the front, according to the principles indicated No. 89.

108. At the command *march*, each captain placing himself on the left of his leading guide will conduct his company perpendicularly to the original line. At the fourth command, the guide of each company will dress to the right, left, or centre, according to the indication given, taking care to preserve accurately his distance.

109. If the colonel should wish to move to the front, or rear, by the left of companies, the movement will be executed by the same means and the same commands, substituting *left* for *right*.

110. If the battalion be in march, and the colonel should wish to advance or retire by the right of companies, he will command:

1. *By the right of companies to the front* (or *rear*). 2. *Battalion, by the right flank.* 3. MARCH, (or *double quick*—MARCH. 4. *Guide right* (*left*) or (*centre*).

111. Which will be executed according to the principles and means prescribed Nos. 95 and following, and 106 and following. At the first command, the color and general guides will take their places as in column.

112. If the colonel should wish to advance or retire by the left of companies, the movement will be executed by the same means and the same commands, substituting *left* for *right*.

113. If the battalion be advancing by the right or left of companies, and the colonel should wish to form line to the front, he will command:

1. *By companies into line.* 2. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH). 3. *Guide centre.*

114. At the command *march*, briskly repeated by the captains, each company will be formed into line, as prescribed in the school of the company, No. 154.

115. At the third command, the color and general guides will move rapidly to their places in line, as will be hereinafter prescribed, No. 405.

116. If the battalion be retiring by the right or left of companies, and the colonel should wish to form line facing the enemy, he will first cause the companies to face about while marching, and immediately form in line by the commands and means prescribed, Nos. 113 and following.

Article Third.

To ploy the battalion into close column.

117. This movement may be executed by company or by division, on the right or left subdivision, or on any other subdivision, right or left in front.

119. To ploy the battalion into close column by division in rear of the first, the colonel will command:

1. *Close column, by division.* 2. *On the first division, right in front.* 3. *Battalion, right*—Face. 4. March (or *double quick*—March).

120. At the second command, all the chiefs of division will place themselves before the centres of their divisions; the chief of the first will caution it to stand fast; the chiefs of the three others will remind them that they will have to face to the right, and the covering sergeant of the right company of each division will replace his captain in the front rank, as soon as the latter steps out.

121. At the third command, the last three divisions will face to the right; the chief of each division will hasten to its right, and cause files to be broken to the rear, as indicated, No. 89; the right guide will break at the same time, and place himself before the front rank man of the first file, to conduct him, and each

chief of division will place himself by the side of this guide.

122. The moment these divisions face to the right, the junior captain in each will place himself on the left of the covering sergeant of the left company, who will place himself in the front rank. *This rule is general for all the ploymens by division.*

123. At the command *march*, the chief of the first division will add, *guide left;* at this, its left guide will place himself on its left, as soon as the movement of the second division may permit, and the file-closers will advance one pace upon the rear rank.

124. All the other divisions, each conducted by its chief, will step off together, to take their places in the column; the second will gain, in wheeling by file to the rear, the space of six paces, which ought to separate its guide from the guide of the first division, and so direct its march as to enter the column on a line parallel to this division; the third and fourth divisions will direct themselves diagonally towards, but a little in rear of, the points at which they ought respectively to enter the column; at six paces from the left flank of the column, the head of each of these divisions will incline a little to the left, in order to enter the column as has just been prescribed for the second, taking care also to leave the distance of six paces between its guide and the guide of the preceding division. At the moment the divisions put themselves in march to enter the column, the file closers of each will incline to the left, so as to bring themselves to the distance of a pace from the rear rank.

125. Each chief of these three divisions will conduct his division till he shall be up with the guide of the directing one; the chief will then himself halt, see his division file past, and halt it the instant the last file shall have passed, commanding: 1. *Such division;* 2. HALT; 3. FRONT; 4. *Left*—DRESS.

126. At the second command, the division will halt;

the left guide will place himself promptly on the direction, six paces from the guide which precedes him, in order that, the column being formed, the divisions may be separated the distance of four paces.

127. At the third command, the division will face to the front; at the fourth, it will be aligned by its chief, who will place himself two paces outside of his guide, and direct the alignment so that his division may be parallel to that which precedes—which being done, he will command FRONT, and place himself before the centre of his division.

130. The lieutenant colonel, placing himself in succession in rear of the left guides, will assure them on the direction as they arrive, and then move to his place outside of the left flank of the column six paces from, and abreast with, the first division. In assuring the guides on the direction, he will be a mere observer, unless one or more should fail to cover exactly the guide or guides already established. *This rule is general.*

131. The major will follow the movement abreast with the left of the fourth division, and afterwards take his position outside of the left flank of the column, six paces from, and abreast with, this division.

132. To ploy the battalion in front of the first division, the colonel will give the same commands, substituting the indication *left* for that of *right* in front.

133. At the second and third commands, the chiefs of division and the junior captains will conform themselves to what is prescribed, Nos. 120, 121, 122; but the chiefs of the last three divisions, instead of causing the first two files to break to the rear, will cause them to break to the front.

134. At the fourth command, the chief of the first division will add, *Guide right.*

135. The three other divisions will step off together to take their places in the column in front of the directing division; each will direct itself as prescribed,

No. 124, and will enter in such manner that, when halted, its guide may find himself six paces from the guide of the division next previously established in the column.

136. Each chief of these divisions will conduct his division, till his right guide shall be nearly up with the guide of the directing one; he will then halt his division, and cause it to face to the front; at the instant it halts, its right guide will face to the rear, place himself six paces from the preceding guide, and cover him exactly—which being done, the chief will align his division by the right.

137. The lieutenant colonel, placed in front of the right guide of the first division, will assure the guides on the direction as they successively arrive, and then move outside of the right flank of the column, to a point six paces from, and abreast with, the fourth division, now in front.

138. The major will conform himself to what is prescribed, No. 131, and then move outside of the right flank of the column, six paces from, and abreast with, the first division, now in the rear.

139. The movement being ended, the colonel will command:

Guides, about—FACE.

140. At this, the guides, who are faced to the rear, will face to the front.

141. To ploy the battalion in rear, or in front of the fourth division, the colonel will command:

1. *Close column by division.* 2. *On the fourth division, left* (or *right*) *in front. Battalion, left*—FACE. 4. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

142. These movements will be executed according to the principles of those which precede, but by inverse means; the fourth division on which the bat-

talion ploys will stand fast; the instant the movement commences, its chief will command, *guide right* (or *left*).

143. The foregoing examples embrace all the principles; thus, when the colonel shall wish to ploy the battalion on an interior division, he will command:

1. *Close column by division.* 2. *On such division, right* (or *left*) *in front.* 3. *Battalion inwards*—FACE. 4. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

144. The instant the movement commences, the chief of the directing division will command, *guide left* (or *right*).

145. The divisions which, in the order in battle, are to the right of the directing division, will face to the left; those which are to the left, will face to the right.

146. If the right is to be in front, the right divisions will ploy in front of the directing division, and the left in its rear; the reverse, if the left is to be in front.

147. In all the ployments on an interior division, the lieutenant colonel will assure the positions of the guides in front, and the major those in rear of the directing division.

148. If the battalion be in march, instead of at a halt, the movement will be executed by combining the two gaits of quick and double quick time, and always in rear of one of the flank divisions.

149. The battalion being in march, to ploy it in rear of the first division, the colonel will command:

1. *Close column by division.* 2. *On the first division.* 3. *Battalion—by the right flank.* 4. *Double quick*—MARCH.

152. At the command *march*, the chief of the first division will command: *Guide left.* At this, the left

guide will move to the left flank of the division and direct himself on the point indicated.

153. The three other divisions will face to the right and move off in double quick time, breaking to the right to take their places in column; each chief of division will move rapidly to the right of his division in order to conduct it. The files will be careful to preserve their distances, and to march with a uniform and decided step. The color-bearer and general guides will retake their places in the ranks.

154. The second division will immediately enter the column, marching parallel to the first division; its chief will allow it to file past him, and when the last file is abreast of him, will command: 1. *Second division, by the left flank*—MARCH. 2. *Guide left*, and place himself in front of the centre of his division.

155. At the command *march*, the division will face to the left; at the second command, the left guide will march in the trace of the left guide of the first division; the men will take the touch of elbows to the left. When the second division has closed to its proper distance, its chief will command: *Quick time*—MARCH. This division will then change its step to quick time.

156. The chiefs of the third and fourth divisions will execute their movements according to the same principles, taking care to gain as much ground as possible towards the head of the column.

PART THIRD.

ARTICLE FIRST.

To march in column at full distance.

161. When the colonel shall wish to put the column in march, he will indicate to the leading guide two distinct objects in front, on the line which the guide

ought to follow. This guide will immediately put his shoulders in a square with that line, take the more distant object as the point of direction, and the nearer one as the intermediate point.

164. These dispositions being made, the colonel will command:

1. *Column forward. Guide left* (or *right.*) 3. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

165. At the command *march,* briskly repeated by the chiefs of subdivision, the column will put itself in march, conforming to what is prescribed in the school of the company No. 200 and following.

166. The leading guide may always maintain himself correctly on the direction by keeping steadily in view the two points indicated to him, or chosen by himself; if these points have a certain elevation, he may be assured he is on the true direction, when the nearer masks the more distant point.

167. The following guide will preserve with exactness both step and distance; each will march in the trace of the guide who immediately precedes him, without occupying himself with the general direction.

168. The lieutenant-colonel will hold himself, habitually, abreast with the leading guide, to see that he does not deviate from the direction, and will observe, also, that the next guide marches exactly in the trace of the first.

169. The major will generally be abreast with the last subdivision; he will see that each guide marches exactly in the trace of the one immediately preceding; if either deviate from the direction, the major will promptly rectify the error, and prevent its being propagated; but he need not interfere, in this way, unless the deviation has become sensible, or material.

170. The column being in march, the colonel will frequently cause the *about* to be executed while marching; to this effect, he will command:

1. *Battalion, right about.* 2. MARCH. 3. *Guide right.*

171. At the second command, the companies will face to the right about, and the column will then march forward in an opposite direction; the chiefs of subdivision will remain behind the front rank, the file closers in front of the rear rank, and the guides will place themselves in the same rank. The lieutenant-colonel will remain abreast of the first division, now in rear; the major will give a point of direction to the leading guide, and march abreast of him.

ARTICLE THIRD.

To change direction in column at full distance.

231. The column being in march in the cadenced step, when the colonel shall wish to cause it to change direction, he will go to the point at which the change ought to be commenced, and establish a marker there, presenting the breast to the flank of the column; this marker, no matter to which side the change of direction is to be made, will be posted on the opposite side, and he will remain in position till the last subdivision of the battalion shall have passed. The leading subdivision being within a few paces of the marker, the colonel will command:

Head of column to the left (or *right*).

232. At this, the chief of the leading subdivision will immediately take the guide on the side opposite the change of direction, if not already there. This guide will direct himself so as to graze the breast of the marker; arrived at this point, the chief will cause his subdivision to change direction by the commands and according to the principles prescribed in the school of the company. When the wheel is completed, the

chief of this subdivision will retake the guide, if changed, on the side of the primitive direction.

233. The chief of each succeeding subdivision, as well as the guides, will conform to what has just been explained for the leading subdivision.

Article Fourth.

To halt the column.

239. The column being in march, when the colonel shall wish to halt it, he will command:

1. *Column.* 2. Halt.

240. At the second command, briskly repeated by the captains, the column will halt; no guide will stir, though he may have lost his distance, or be out of the direction of the preceding guides.

241. The column being in march, in double quick time, will be halted by the same commands. At the command *halt*, the men will halt in their places, and will themselves rectify their positions in the ranks.

242. The column being halted, when the colonel shall wish to form it into line of battle, he will move a little in front of the leading guide, and face to him; this guide and the following one will fix their eyes on the colonel, in order promptly to conform themselves to his directions.

243. If the colonel judge it not necessary to give a general direction to the guides, he will limit himself to rectifying the position of such as may be without, or within the direction, by the command *guide of* (such) *company*, or *guides of* (such) *companies, to the right,* (or *to the left;*) at this command, the guides designated will place themselves on the direction; the others will stand fast.

244. If, on the contrary, the colonel judge it neces-

sary to give a general direction to the guides of the column, he will place the first two on the direction he shall have chosen, and command:

Guides, cover.

242. At this, the following guides will promptly place themselves on the direction covering the first two in file, and each precisely at a distance equal to the front of his company, from the guide immediately preceding; the lieutenant-colonel will assure them in the direction, and the colonel will command:

Left, (or *right*)—DRESS.

246. At this command, each company will incline to the right or left, and dress forward or backward, so as to bring the designated flank to rest on its guide; each captain will place himself two paces outside of his guide, promptly align his company parallelly with that which precedes, then command FRONT, and return to his place in column.

ARTICLE FIFTH.

To close the column to half distance, or in mass.

252. A column by company being at full distance right in front, and at a halt, when the colonel shall wish to cause it to close to half distance, on the leading company, he will command:

1. *To half distance, close column.* 2. MARCH, (or *double quick*—MARCH.)

253. At the first command, the captain of the leading company will caution it to stand fast.

254. At the command *march*, which will be repeated by all the captains, except the captain of the leading

company, this company will stand fast, and its chief will align it by the left; the file closers will close one pace upon the rear rank.

255. All the other companies will continue to march, and as each in succession arrives at platoon distance from the one which precedes, its captain will halt it.

256. At the instant that each company halts, its guide will place himself on the direction of the guides who precede, and the captain will align the company by the left; the file closers will close one pace upon the rear rank.

257. No particular attention need be given to the general direction of the guides before they respectively halt; it will suffice if each follow in the trace of the one who precedes him.

258. The colonel, on the side of the guides, will superintend the execution of the movement, observing that the captains halt their companies exactly at platoon distance the one from the other.

259. The lieutenant colonel, a few paces in front, will face to the leading guide, and assure the positions of the following guides, as they successively place themselves on the direction.

260. The major will follow the movement abreast with the last guide.

261. If the column be in march, the colonel will cause it to close by the same commands.

262. If the column be marching in double quick time, at the first command, the captain of the leading company will command *quick time;* the chiefs of the other companies will caution them to continue their march.

263. At the command *march*, the leading company will march in quick, and the other companies in double quick time; and as each arrives at platoon distance from the preceding one, its chief will cause it to march in quick time.

264. When the rearmost company shall have gained its distance, the colonel will command:

Double quick—MARCH.

265. When the colonel shall wish to halt the column and to cause it to close to half distance at the same time, he will notify the captain of the leading company of his intention, who, at the command *march*, will halt his company and align it by the left.

266. If the column be marching in quick time, and the colonel should not give the command *double quick*, the captain of the leading company will halt his company at the command *march*, and align it by the left. In the case where the colonel adds the command *double quick*, the captains of companies will conform to what is prescribed No. 262, and the movement will be executed as indicated No. 263.

To close the column on the eighth, or rearmost company.

267. The column being at a halt, if instead of causing it to close to half distance on the first company, the colonel should wish to cause it to close on the eighth, he will command:

1. *On the eighth company, to half distance close column.* 2. *Battalion, about*—FACE. 3. *Column forward.* 4. *Guide right.* 5. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

268. At the second command, all the companies, except the eighth, will face about, and their guides will remain in the front rank, now the rear.

269. At the fourth command, all the captains will place themselves two paces outside of their companies on the directing flank.

270. At the command *march*, the eighth company will stand fast, and its captain will align it by the left,

the other companies will put themselves in march, and, as each arrives at platoon distance from the one established before it, its captain will halt it and face it to the front. At the moment that each company halts, the left guide, remaining faced to the rear, will place himself promptly on the direction of the guides already established. Immediately after, the captain will align his company by the left, and the file closers will close one pace on the rear rank. If this movement be executed in double quick time, each captain, in turn, will halt, and command, *Such company, right about*—HALT. At this command, the company designated will face to the right about and halt.

271. All the companies being aligned, the colonel will cause the guides, who stand faced to the rear, to face about.

272. The lieutenant colonel, placing himself behind the rearmost guide, will assure successively the positions of the other guides, the major will remain abreast with the rearmost company.

273. The column being in march, when the colonel shall wish to close it on the eighth company, he will command:

1. *On the eighth company, to half distance, close column.* 2. *Battalion right about.* 3. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH). 4. *Guide right.*

274. At the first command, the captain of the eighth company will caution his company that it will remain faced to the front; the captains of the other companies will caution their companies that they will have to face about.

275. At the command *march*, the captain of the eighth company will halt his company and align it by the left; the file closers will close one pace upon the rear rank.

276. The captains of the other companies, at the same command, will place themselves on the flank of

the column; the subdivisions will face about, and as each arrives at platoon distance from the company immediately preceding it, its chief will face it to the front and halt it as prescribed, No. 270. The instant each company halts, the guide on the directing flank, remaining faced to the rear, will quickly place himself on the direction of the guides already established. After which, the captain will align the company by the left, and the file closers will close one pace upon the rear rank.

277. The lieutenant colonel will follow the movement abreast of the first company. The major will place himself a few paces in rear of the guide of the eighth company, and will assure successively the position of the other guides.

Article Sixth.

To march in column at half distance, or closed in mass.

281. A column at half distance or in mass, being at a halt, the colonel will put it in march by the commands prescribed for a column at full distance.

Article Seventh.

To change direction in column at half distance.

287. A column at half distance, being in march, will change direction by the same commands and according to the same principles as a column at full distance; but as the distance between the subdivisions is less, the pivot man in each subdivision will take steps of fourteen inches instead of nine, and of seventeen inches instead of eleven, according to the gait, in order to clear, in time, the wheeling point, and the march-

ing flank will describe the arc of a larger circle, the better to facilitate the movement.

Article Eighth.

To change direction in column closed in mass.

1*st. To change direction in marching.*

288. A column by division, closed in mass, being in march, will change direction by the *front* of subdivisions.

289. Whether the change be made to the reverse, or to the pivot flank, it will always be executed on the principle of wheeling in marching; to this end, the colonel will first cause the battalion to take the guide on the flank opposite to the intended change of direction, if it be not already on that flank.

290. A column by division, closed in mass, right in front, having to change direction to the right, the colonel, after having caused a marker to be placed at the point where the change ought to commence, will command:

1. *Battalion, right wheel.* 2. March.

291. At the command *march*, the leading division will wheel as if it were part of a column at half distance.

292. The instant that this division commences the wheel, all the others will, at once, conform themselves to its movement; to this end the left guide of each, advancing slightly the left shoulder, and lengthening a little the step, will incline to the left, and will observe, at the same time, to gain so much ground to the front that there may constantly be an interval of four paces between his division and that which precedes it: and as soon as he shall cover the preceding guide,

he will cease to incline and then march exactly in his trace.

293. Each division will conform itself to the movement of its guide; the men will feel lightly the elbow towards him and advance a little the left shoulder the instant the movement commences; each file, in inclining, will gain so much the less ground to the front, as the file shall be nearer to the pivot, and the right guide will gain only so much as may be necessary to maintain between his own and the preceding division the same distance which separates their marching flanks.

298. The colonel, seeing the wheel nearly ended, will command:

1. *Forward.* 2. MARCH.

299. At the second command, which will be given at the instant the leading division completes its wheel, it will resume the direct march; the other divisions will conform themselves to this movement; and if any guide find himself not covering his immediate leader, he will, by slight degrees, bring himself on the trace of that guide, by advancing the right shoulder.

2d. To change the direction from a halt.

306. A column by company, or by division, closed in mass, being at a halt, when the colonel shall wish to give it a new direction, and in which it is to remain, he will cause it to execute this movement by the flanks of subdivisions, in the following manner:

307. The battalion having the right in front, when the colonel shall wish to cause it to change direction by the right flank, he will indicate to the lieutenant colonel the point of direction to the right; this officer will immediately establish, on the new direction, two markers, distant from each other a little less than the front of the first subdivision, the first marker in front

of the right file of the subdivision; which being executed, he will command:

1. *Change direction by the right flank.* 2. *Battalion, right*—FACE. 3. MARCH (*or double quick*—MARCH)

308. At the second command, the column will face to the right, and each chief of subdivision will place himself by the side of his right guide.

309. At the command *march*, all the subdivisions will step off together; the right guide of the leading one will direct himself from the first step, parallelly to the markers placed in advance on the new direction; the chief of the subdivision will not follow the movement, but see it file past, and as soon as the left guide shall have passed, he will command:

1. *First company* (or *first division.*) 2. HALT. 3. FRONT. 4. *Left*—DRESS.

310. At the fourth command, the subdivision will place itself against the two markers, and be promptly aligned by its chief.

311. The right guide of each of the following subdivisions will conform himself to the direction of the the right guide of the subdivision preceding his own in the column, so as to enter on the new direction parallelly to that subdivision, and at the distance of four paces from its rear rank.

312. Each chief of subdivision will halt in his own person, on arriving opposite to the left guides already placed on the new direction, see his subdivision file past, and conform himself, in halting and aligning it, to what is prescribed, No. 309.

Article Ninth.

Being in column at half distance, or closed in mass, to take distances.

1st. To take distances by the head of the column.

323. The column being by company at half distance and at a halt, when the colonel shall wish to cause it to take full distances by the head, he will command:

By the head of column, take wheeling distance.

324. At this command, the captain of the leading company will put it in march; to this end he will command:

1. *First company, forward.* 2. *Guide left.* 3. March (or *double quick*—March.)

325. When the second shall have nearly its wheeling distance, the captain will command:

1. *Second company, forward.* 2. *Guide left.* 3. March (or *double quick*—March.)

326. At the command *march*, which will be pronounced at the instant that this company shall have its wheeling distance, it will step off smartly, taking the step from the preceding company. Each of the other companies will successively execute what has just been prescribed for the second.

327. The colonel will see that each company puts itself in march at the instant it has its distance.

328. The lieutenant colonel will hold himself at the head of the column, and direct the march of the leading guide.

329. The major will hold himself abreast with the rearmost guide.

330. If the column, instead of being at a halt, be

in march, the colonel will give the same commands, and add:

MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH.)

331. If the column be marching in quick time, at the command *march*, the captain of the leading company will cause *double quick time* to be taken, which will also be done by the other captains as the companies successively attain their proper wheeling distance.

332. If the column be marching in *double quick time*, the leading company will continue to march at the same gait. The captains of the other companies will cause *quick time* to be taken, and as each company gains its proper distance, its captain will cause it to retake the *double quick step*.

2d. To take distances on the rear of the column.

333. If the colonel wish to take distances on the rearmost company, he will establish two markers on the direction he shall wish to give to the line of battle, the first opposite to the rearmost company, the second marker towards the head of the column, at company distance from the first, and both facing to the rear; at the same time, the right general guide, on an intimation from the lieutenant colonel, will move rapidly a little beyond the point to which the head of the column will extend, and place himself correctly on the prolongation of the two markers. These dispositions being made, the colonel will command:

1. *On the eighth company, take wheeling distance.* 2. *Column forward.* 3. *Guide left.* 4. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

334. At the third command, the captains will place themselves two paces outside of the directing flank; the captain of the eighth company will caution it to stand fast.

335. At the command *march*, repeated by all the captains, except the captain of the eighth company, this latter company will stand fast; its chief will align it by the left on the first marker, who is opposite to this company, and place himself before its centre, after commanding: FRONT. At this command, the marker will retire, and the left guide will take his place.

336. All the other companies will put themselves in march, the guide of the leading one directing himself a little within the right general guide; when the seventh company has arrived opposite the second marker, its captain will halt, and align it on this marker, in the manner prescribed for the eighth company.

337. When the captain of the sixth company shall see that there is, between his company and the seventh, the necessary space for wheeling into line, he will halt his company; the guide facing to the rear will place himself promptly on the direction, and the moment he shall be assured in his position, the captain will align the company by the left, and then place himself two paces before its centre; the other companies will successively conform themselves to what has just been prescribed for the sixth company.

338. The colonel will follow the movement and see that each company halts at the prescribed distance; he will promptly remedy any fault that may be committed, and, as soon as all the companies shall be aligned, he will cause the guides, who are faced to the rear, to face about.

339. The lieutenant-colonel will successively assure the left guides on the direction, placing himself in their rear, as they arrive.

340. The major will hold himself at the head of the column, and will direct the march of the leading guide.

3d. To take distances on the head of the column.

341. The colonel, wishing to take distances on the leading company, will establish two markers in the manner just prescribed, one abreast with this company and the other at company distance in rear of the first, but both facing to the front: the left general guide, on an intimation from the lieutenant-colonel, will move rapidly to the rear and place himself correctly on the prolongation of the two markers, a little beyond the point to which the rear of the column will extend: these dispositions being made, the colonel will command:

1. *On the first company, take wheeling distance.* 2. *Battalion, about*—FACE. 3. *Column, forward.* 4. *Guide right.* 5. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

342. At the second command, all the companies, except the one designated, will face about, the guides remaining in the front rank, now become the rear.

343. At the fourth command, the captains will place themselves outside of their guides.

344. At the command *march*, the captain of the designated company will align it, as prescribed, No. 335, on the marker placed by its side.

345. The remaining companies will put themselves in march, the guide of the rearmost one will direct himself a little within the left general guide; when the second company shall have arrived opposite the second marker, its captain will face it about, conforming to what is prescribed, No. 270, and align it, as has just been prescribed for the first company.

346. The instant that the third company shall have its wheeling distance, its captain will halt it facing it about, as prescribed, No. 270, and align it by the left; the captains of the remaining companies will each in succession conform himself to what has just been prescribed for the captain of the third.

347. The colonel will follow the movement, as indi-

cated No. 338; the lieutenant-colonel and major will conform themselves to what is prescribed, Nos. 339 and 340.

Article Tenth.

Countermarch of a column at full or half distance.

351. In a column at full or half distance, the countermarch will be executed by the means indicated, school of the company; to this end, the colonel will command:

1. *Countermarch.* 2. *Battalion right* (or *left*)—Face. 3. *By file left* (or *right*). 4. March (or *double quick*—March).

To countermarch a column closed in mass.

352. If the column be closed in mass, the countermarch will be executed by the commands and means subjoined.

353. The column being supposed formed by division, right in front, the colonel will command:

1. *Countermarch.* 2. *Battalion, right and left*—Face. 3. *By file left and right.* 4. March (or *double quick*—March).

354. At the first command the chiefs of the odd numbered divisions will caution them to face to the right, and the chiefs of the others to face to the left.

355. At the second command, the odd divisions will face to the right, and the even to the left; the right and left guides of all the divisions will face about; the chiefs of odd divisions will hasten to their right and cause two files to break to the rear, and each chief place himself on the left of the leading front rank man

of his division; the chiefs of even divisions will hasten to their left, and cause two files to break to the rear, and each chief place himself on the right of his leading front rank man.

356. At the command *march*, all the divisions, each conducted by its chief, will step off smartly, the guides standing fast; each odd division will wheel by file to the left around its right guide; each even division will wheel by file to the right around its left guide, each division so directing its march as to arrive behind its opposite guide, and when its head shall be up with this guide, the chief will halt the division, and cause it to face to the front.

357. Each division, on facing to the front, will be aligned by its chief by the right; to this end, the chiefs of the even divisions will move rapidly to the right of their respective divisions.

358. The divisions being aligned, each chief will command, FRONT; at this, the guides will shift to their proper flanks.

359. In a column with the left in front, the countermarch will be executed by the same commands and means; but all the divisions will be aligned by the left: to this end, the chiefs of the odd divisions will hasten to the left of their respective divisions as soon as the latter shall have been faced to the front.

362. In a column by company, closed in mass, the countermarch will be executed by the same means and commands, applying to companies what is prescribed for divisions.

363. The countermarch will always take place from a halt, whether the column be closed in mass, or at full, or half distance.

Article Eleventh.

Being in column by company, closed in mass, to form divisions.

364. The column being closed in mass, right in front and at a halt, when the colonel shall wish to form divisions, he will command:

1. *Form divisions.* 2. *Left companies, left*—Face. 3. March (or *double quick*—March).

365. At the first command, the captains of the left companies will caution them to face to the left.

366. At the second command, the left companies will face to the left, and their captains will place themselves by the side of their respective left guides.

367. The right companies, and their captains will stand fast; but the right and left guides of each of these companies will place themselves respectively before the right and left files of the company, both guides facing to the right, and each resting his right arm gently against the breast of the front rank man of the file, in order to mark the direction.

368. At the command *march*, the left companies only will put themselves in march, their captains standing fast; as each shall see that his company, filing past, has nearly cleared the column, he will command:

1. *Such company.* 2. Halt. 3. Front.

369. The first command will be given when the company shall yet have four paces to march; the second at the instant it shall have cleared its right company; and the third immediately after the second.

370. The company having faced to the front, the files, if there be intervals between them, will promptly

incline to the right, the captain will place himself on the left of the right company of the division, and align himself correctly on the front rank of that company.

371. The left guide will place himself at the same time before one of the three left files of his company, face to the right, and cover correctly the guides of the right company; the moment his captain sees him established on the direction, he will command:

Right—DRESS.

372. At this, the left company will dress forward on the alignment of the right company; the front rank man, who may find himself opposite to the left guide, will, without preceding his rank, rest lightly his breast against the right arm of this guide; the captain of the left company will direct its alignment on this man, and the alignment being assured, he will command, FRONT; but not quit his position.

373. The colonel seeing the divisions formed, will command:

Guides—POSTS.

374. At this, the guides who have marked the fronts of divisions will return to their places in column, the left guide of each right company passing through the interval in the centre of the division, and the captains will place themselves as prescribed.

376. If the column be in march, instead of at a halt, when the colonel shall wish to form divisions, he will command:

1. *Form divisions.* 2. *Left companies, by the left flank.* 3. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

377. At the first command, the captains of the right companies will command, *Mark time*, the captains of the left companies will caution their companies to *face by the left flank.*

378. At the third command, the right companies will mark time, the left companies will face to the left; the captains of the left companies will each see his company file past him, and when it has cleared the column, will command:

Such company by the right flank—MARCH.

As soon as the divisions are formed, the colonel will command:

4. *Forward.* 5. MARCH.

379. At the fifth command, the column will resume the gait at which it was marching previous to the commencement of the movement. The guides of each division will remain on the right and left of their respective companies; the left guide of the right company will pass into the line of file-closers, before the two companies are united; the right guide of the left company will step into the rear rank. The captains will place themselves as prescribed No. 75.

Being in column at full or half distance to form divisions.

380. If the column be at a halt, and, instead of being closed in mass, is at full or half distance, divisions will be formed in the same manner; but the captains of the left companies, if the movement be made in quick time, after commanding FRONT, will each place himself before the centre of his company, and command, 1. *Such company forward.* 2. *Guide right.* 3. MARCH. If the movement be made in double quick time, each will command as soon as his company has cleared the column:

1. *Such company by the right flank.* 2. MARCH.

382. If the left be in front, the movement will be executed by inverse means.

PART FOURTH.

Different modes of passing from the order in column to the order in battle.

Article First.

Manner of determining the line of battle.

389. The line of battle may be marked or determined in three different manners: 1*st*, by placing two markers eighty or a hundred paces apart, on the direction it is wished to give to the line; 2*d*, by placing a marker at the point at which it may be intended to rest a flank, and then choosing a second point towards, or beyond the opposite flank, and there posting a second marker distant from each other a little less than the leading subdivision; 3*d*, by choosing at first the points of direction for the flanks, and then determining by intermediate points, the straight line between those selected points, both of which may sometimes be beyond reach.

Article Second.

Different modes of passing from column at full distance into line of battle.

1*st*. *Column at full distance, right in front, to the left into line of battle.*

390. A column, right in front, being at a halt, when the colonel shall wish to form it to the left into line, he will assure the positions of the guides by the means previously indicated, and then command:

1. *Left into line, wheel.* 2. March (or *double quick*—March).

391. At the first command, the right guide of the leading company will hasten to place himself on the direction of the left guides of the column, face to them, and place himself so as to be opposite to one of the three right files of his company, when they shall be in line; he will be assured in this position by the lieutenant colonel.

392. At the command *march*, briskly repeated by the captains, the left front rank man of each company will face to the left, and rest his breast lightly against the right arm of his guide; the companies will wheel to the left, on the principle of wheeling from a halt, conforming themselves to what is prescribed, school of the company, No. 239; each captain will turn to his company, to observe the execution of the movement, and, when the right of the company shall arrive at three paces from the line of battle, he will command:

1. *Such company.* 2. HALT.

393. The company being halted, the captain will place himself on the line by the side of the left front rank man of the company next on the right, align himself correctly, and command:

3. *Right*—DRESS.

394. At this command, the company will dress up between the captain and the front rank man on its left, the captain directing the alignment on that man; the front rank man on the right of the right company, who finds himself opposite to its right guide, will lightly rest his breast against the left arm of this guide.

395. Each captain, having aligned his company, will command FRONT, and the colonel will add:

Guides—POSTS.

396. At this command, the guides will return to their places in line of battle, each passing through the

nearest captain's interval; to permit him to pass, the captain will momentarily step before the first file of his company. and the covering sergeant behind the same file. *This rule is general for all the formations into line of battle.*

397. When companies form line of battle, file closers will always place themselves exactly two paces from the rear rank, which will sufficiently assure their alignment.

398. The battalion being correctly aligned, the colonel, lieutenant colonel and major, as well as the adjutant and sergeant major, will return to their respective places in line of battle. *This rule is general for all the formations into line of battle.*

399. A column, with the left in front, will form itself *to the right into line of battle*, according to the same principles.

400. At the command *guides posts*, the captains will take their places in line of battle, as well as the guides. *This rule is general for all formations into line of battle in which the companies are aligned by the left.*

401. A column by division may form itself into line of battle by the same commands and means, but observing what follows; if the right be in front, at the command *halt*, given by the chiefs of division, the left guide of each right company will place himself on the alignment opposite to one of the three files on the left of his company; the left guide of the first company will be assured on the direction by the lieutenant colonel; the left guides of the other right companies will align themselves correctly on the division guides; to this end, the division guides (on the alignment) will invert, and hold their pieces up perpendicularly before the centre of their bodies, at the command *left into line, wheel*, If the column by division be with the left in front, the right guides of left companies will conform themselves to what has just been prescribed or the left guides of right companies, and place them-

selves on the line opposite to one of the three right files of their respective companies.

402. A column in march will be formed into line, without halting, by the same commands and means. At the command *march*, the guides will halt in their places, and the lieutenant colonel will promptly rectify their positions.

403. If, in forming the column into line, the colonel should wish to move forward, without halting, he will command:

1. *By companies left wheel.* 2. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH.)

404. At the command *march*, briskly repeated by the captains, each company will wheel to the left on a fixed pivot, as prescribed in the school of the company, the left guides will step back into the rank of file closers before the wheel is completed, and when the right of the companies shall arrive near the line, the colonel will command:

3. *Forward.* 4. MARCH. 5. *Guide centre.*

405. At the fourth command, given at the instant the wheel is completed, the companies will march directly to the front. At the fifth command, the color and the general guides will move rapidly six paces to the front. The colonel will assure the direction of the color; the captains of companies and the men will, at once, conform themselves to the principles of the march in line of battle, to be indicated, No. 587.

406. The same principles are applicable to a column left in front.

By inversion to the right (or *left*) *into line of battle.*

407. When a column, right in front, shall be under the necessity of forming itself into line faced to the

reverse flank, and the colonel shall wish to execute this formation by the shortest movement, he will command:

1. *By inversion, right into line, wheel.* 2. *Battalion, guide right.*

408. At the first command, the lieutenant colonel will place himself in front, and facing to the right guide of the leading subdivision; at the second command, he will rectify, as promptly as possible, the direction of the right guides of the column; the captain of the odd company, if there be one, and the column be by division, will promptly bring the right of his company on the direction, and at company distance from the division next in front; the left guide of the leading subdivision will place himself on the direction of the right guides, and will be assured in his position by the lieutenant colonel; which being executed, the colonel will command:

3. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

409. At this, the right front rank man of each subdivision will face to the right, rest his breast lightly against the left arm of his guide, and the battalion will form itself to the right into line of battle, according to the principles prescribed.

Successive Formations.

412. Under the denomination of successive formations are included all those formations where the several subdivisions of a column arrive one after another on the line of battle; such are formations on the right or left, forward and faced to the rear into line of battle, as well as deployments of columns in mass.

413. The successive formations which may be or-

dered when the column is marching, and is to continue marching, will be executed by a combination of the two gaits, *quick* and *double quick* time.

2*d*. *Column at full distance, on the right* (or *on the left*), *into line of battle.*

414. A column by company, at full distance and right in front, having to form itself on the right into line of battle, the colonel will indicate to the lieutenant colonel a little in advance, the point of *appui*, or rest, for the right, as well as the point of direction to the left; the lieutenant colonel will hasten with two markers, and establish them in the following manner on the direction indicated.

415. The first marker will be placed at the point of *appui* for the right front rank man of the leading company; the second will indicate the point where one of the three left files of the same company will rest when in line; they will be placed so as to present the right shoulder to the battalion when formed.

416. These dispositions being made, the colonel will command:

1. *On the right, into line.* 2. *Battalion, guide right.*

417. At the second command, the right will become the directing flank, and the touch of the elbow will be to that side; the right guide of the leading company will march straight forward until up with the turning point, and each following guide will march in the trace of the one immediately preceding.

418. The leading company being nearly up with the first marker, its captain will command: 1. *Right turn*, and when the company is precisely up with this marker, he will add: 2. MARCH.

419. At the command *march*, the company will turn to the right; the right guide will so direct himself as to bring the man next to him opposite to the right

marker, and when at three paces from him, the captain will command:

1. *First company.* 2. HALT.

420. At the second command, the company will halt, the files, not yet in line, will form promptly, the left guide will retire as a file-closer, and the captain will then command:

3. *Right*—DRESS.

421. At this command, the company will align itself; the two men who find themselves opposite to the two markers will each lightly rest his breast against the right arm of his marker; the captain, passing to the right of the front rank, will direct the alignment on these two men. *These rules are general for all successive formations.*

422. The second company will continue to march straight forward; when arrived opposite to the left flank of the preceding company, it will turn to the right, and be formed on the line of battle, as has just been prescribed; the right guide will direct himself so as to come upon that line by the side of the man on the left of the first company.

423. At the distance of three paces from the line of battle, the company will be halted by its captain, who will place himself briskly by the side of the man on the left of the preceding company, and align himself correctly on its front rank.

424. The left guide will at the same time place himself before one of the three left files of his company, and, facing to the right, he will place himself accurately on the direction of the two markers of the preceding company.

425. The captain will then command:

Right—DRESS.

426. At this command, the second company will dress forward on the line; the captain will direct its alignment on the front rank man who has rested his breast against the left guide of the company.

427. The following companies will thus come successively to form themselves on the line of battle, each conforming itself to what has just been prescribed for the one next to the right; and when they shall all be established, the colonel will command:

Guides—POSTS.

428. At this command, the guides will take their places in line of battle, and the markers placed before the right company will retire.

429. If the column be marching in quick time, and the colonel should wish to cause the movement to be executed in double quick time, he will add the command: *Double quick*—MARCH. At the command *march*, all the companies will take the double quick step, and the movement will be executed as prescribed, No. 417, and following.

430. The colonel will follow up the formation, passing along the front, and being always opposite to the company about to turn; it is thus that he will be the better able to see and to correct the error that would result from a command given too soon or too late to the preceding company.

431. The lieutenant colonel will, with the greatest care, assure the direction of the guides; to this end, the instant that the markers are established for the leading company, he will move a little beyond the point at which the left of the next company will rest, establish himself correctly on the prolongation of the two markers, and assure the guide of the second company on this direction: this guide being assured, the lieutenant colonel will place himself farther to the rear, in order to assure, in like manner, the guide of

the third company, and so on, successively, to the left of the battalion. In assuring the guides in their positions on the line of battle, he will take care to let them first place themselves, and confine himself to rectifying their positions if they do not cover accurately, and at the proper distance, the preceding guides or markers. *This rule is general for all successive formations.*

432. A column, left in front, will form itself on the left into line of battle according to the same principles.

435. When the direction of the line of battle forms a sensible angle with that of the march of the column, the colonel, before beginning the movement, will give the head of the column a new direction parallel to that line.

437. Each captain will cause his company to support arms, the instant that the captain, who follows him, shall have commanded *front. This rule is general for all successive formations.*

438. When, in the execution of this movement, the colonel shall wish to commence firing, he will give the order to that effect to the captain whose company is the first in line of battle; this captain will immediately place himself behind the centre of his company, and as soon as the next captain shall have commanded *front*, he will commence the fire by file, by the commands prescribed, school of the company. At the command *fire by file*, the marker at the outer file of this first company will retire, and the other will place himself against the nearest man of the next company. The captain of the latter will commence firing as soon as the captain of the third company, in line, shall have commanded *front;* the marker before the nearest file of the second company, in line, will now retire, and the guide before the opposite flank will place himself before the nearest file of the third company, in line, and so on, in continuation, to the last company

on the left or right of the battalion, according as the formation may have commenced with the right or left in front.

3d. Column at full distance, forward into line of battle.

440. A column being by company, at full distance, right in front, and at a halt, when the colonel shall wish to form it forward into line, he will conform to what is prescribed, Nos. 414 and 415, and then command:

1. *Forward into line.* 2. *By company, left half wheel.* 3. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

441. At the first command, the captain of the leading company will add—*guide right*, put the company in march, halt it three paces from the markers, and align it against the latter by the right.

442. At the command *march*, all the other companies will wheel to the left on fixed pivots; and, at the instant the colonel shall judge, according to the direction of the line of battle, that the companies have sufficiently wheeled, he will command:

4. *Forward.* 5. MARCH. 6. *Guide right.*

443. At the fifth command, the companies, ceasing to wheel, will march straight forward; and at the sixth, the men will touch elbows towards the right. The right guide of the second company, who is nearest to the line of battle, will march straight forward; each succeeding right guide will follow the file immediately before him at the cessation of the wheel.

444. The second company having arrived opposite to the left file of the first, its captain will cause it to turn to the right, in order to approach the line of bat-

tle; and when its right guide shall be at three paces from that line, the captain will command:

1. *Second company.* 2. HALT.

445. At the second command, the company will halt; the files not yet in line with the guide will come into it promptly, the left guide will place himself on the line of battle, so as to be opposite to one of the three files on the left of the company; and as soon as he is assured on the direction by the lieutenant colonel, the captain, having placed himself accurately on the line of battle, will command:

3. *Right*—DRESS.

446. At the instant that the guide of the second company begins to turn to the right, the guide of the third, ceasing to follow the file immediately before him, will march straight forward; and when he shall arrive opposite to the left of the second, his captain will cause the company to turn to the right, in order to approach the line of battle, halt it at three paces from that line, and align it by the right, as prescribed for the second company.

447. Each following company will execute what has just been prescribed for the third, as the preceding company shall turn to the right, in order to approach the line of battle.

448. The formation ended, the colonel will command:

Guides—POSTS.

449. The colonel and lieutenant colonel will observe in this formation, what is prescribed for them on the right into line.

450. A column left in front, will form itself forward into line of battle according to the same principles and by inverse means.

451. When a column by company at full distance, right in front, and in march, shall arrive at company distance from the two markers established on the line, the colonel will command:

1. *Forward into line.* 2. *By company, left half wheel.* 3. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

453. At the first command, the captain of the first company will command, *Guide right*, and caution it to march directly to the front, the captains of the other companies will caution them to wheel to the left.

454. At the command *march*, briskly repeated by the captains, the movement will be executed as in the last case.

456. If the colonel should wish to form the column forward into line, and to continue to march in this order, he will not cause markers to be established; the movement will be executed in *double quick time*, by the same commands and means, but with the following modifications.

457. At the first command, the captain of the first company will add *quick time*, after the command *guide right*. At the second command, the first company will continue to march in quick time, and will take the touch of elbows to the right; its chief will immediately place himself on its right, and to assure the march, will take points of direction to the front. The captain of the second company will cause his company to take the same gait as soon as it shall arrive on a line with the first, and will also move to the right of his company; the captains of the third and fourth companies will execute successively what has just been prescribed for the second. The companies will preserve the touch of elbows to the right, until the command, *guide centre.*

458. When the color company shall have entered the line, the colonel will command, *guide centre.* At

this command, the color-bearer and the right general guide will move rapidly six paces in advance of the line. The colonel will assure the direction of the color-bearer. The lieutenant colonel and the right companies will immediately conform themselves to the principles of the march in line of battle. The left companies and the left general guide, as they arrive on the line, will also conform to the same principles. If the column be marching in double quick time, when the last company shall have arrived on the line, the colonel will cause the double quick to be resumed.

4th. Column at full distance, faced to the rear, into line of battle.

466. A column being by company, at full distance, right in front, and at a halt, when the colonel shall wish to form it into line faced to the rear, he and the lieutenant colonel will conform themselves to what is prescribed Nos 414 and 415, and the colonel will then command:

1. *Into line, faced to the rear.* 2. *Battalion, right*—FACE. 3. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

467. At the first command, the captain of the leading company will cause it to face to the right, and put it in march, causing it to wheel by file to the left, and direct its march towards the line of battle which it will pass in rear of the left marker; the first file having passed three paces beyond the line, the company will wheel again by file to the left, in order to place itself in rear of the two markers; being in this position, its captain will halt it, face it to the front, and align it by the right against the markers.

468. At the second command, all the other companies will face to the right, each captain placing himself by the side of his right guide.

469. At the command *march*, the companies will put themselves in movement; the left guide of the second, who is nearest to the line of battle, will hasten in advance to mark that line; he will place himself on it as prescribed above for successive formations, and thus indicate to his captain the point at which he ought to pass the line of battle, by three paces, in order to wheel by file to the left, and then to direct his company parallelly to that line.

470. As soon as the first file of this company shall have arrived near the left file of the preceding one already on the line of battle, its captain will command:

1. *Second company.* 2. HALT. 3. FRONT.
4. *Right*—DRESS.

471. The first command will be given when the company shall yet have four paces to take to reach the halting point.

472. At the second command, the company will halt.

473. At the third, the company will face to the front, and if there be openings between the files, the latter will promptly close to the right; the captain will immediately place himself by the side of the man on the left of the preceding company, and align himself on its front rank.

474. The fourth command will be executed as prescribed, No. 426.

475. The following companies will be conducted and established on the line of battle as just prescribed for the second, each regulating itself by the one that precedes it; the left guides will detach themselves in time to precede their respective companies on the line by twelve or fifteen paces, and each place himself so as to be opposite to one of the three left files of his company, when in line. If the movement be executed in double quick time, the moment it is commenced, all

the left guides will detach themselves at the same time from the column, and will move at a run, to establish themselves on the line of battle.

476. The formation ended, the colonel will command:

Guides—POST.

477. The colonel and lieutenant colonel, in this formation, will each observe what is prescribed for him in that of *on the right, into line of battle.*

478. A column, left in front, will form itself faced to the rear into line of battle according to the same principles and by inverse means.

479. If the column be in march, and nearly at company distance from the two markers established on the line, the colonel will command:

1. *Into line, faced to the rear.* 2. *Battalion, by the right flank.* 3. MARCH (or *double quick* MARCH).

481. At the first command, the captains will caution their companies to face by the right flank.

482. At the command *march*, briskly repeated by the captains of companies, all the companies will face to the right. The remaining part of the movement will be executed as heretofore explained.

ARTICLE THIRD.

Formation in line of battle by two movements.

485. If a column by company, right in front, and at a halt, find itself in part on the line of battle, and the colonel should think proper to form line of battle before all the companies enter the new direction, the formation will be executed in the following manner:

486. It will be supposed that the column has arrived

behind the line of battle, and that five companies have entered the new direction. The colonel having assured the guides of the first five companies on the direction, will command:

1. *Left into line, wheel.* 2. *Three rear companies, forward into line.*

487. At the second command, the chief of each of the rear companies will command: *By company, left half wheel;* and the colonel will add:

3. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

488. At this command, briskly repeated, the first five companies will form themselves *to the left, into line of battle*, and the three last *forward, into line of battle*, by the means prescribed for these respective formations; each captain of the three rear companies will, when his company shall have sufficiently wheeled, command:

1. *Forward.* 2. MARCH. 3. *Guide right.*

489. If the column be in march, the colonel will command:

1. *To the left, and forward into line.* 2. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

491. If the colonel should wish, in forming the battalion into line, to march it immediately forward, he will command:

1. *By company to the left, and forward into line.*
2. MARCH.

492. And when the right of these companies shall arrive on the line, the colonel will command:

3. *Forward.* 4. MARCH. 5. *Guide centre.*

494. If the battalion be marching in double quick time, the colonel will cause quick time to be taken before commencing the movement.

495. If, instead of arriving behind, the column should arrive before the line of battle, the colonel will command:

1. *Left into line, wheel.* 2. *Three rear companies, into line, faced to the rear.*

496. At the second command, the captain of each of the three rear companies will command: 1. *Such company;* 2. *Right*—FACE. The colonel will then add:

3. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

497. At this command, briskly repeated, the first five companies will form themselves *to the left, into line of battle,* and the three last *faced to the rear, into line of battle.*

498. If the column be in march, the colonel will command:

1. *To the left, and into line faced to the rear.* 2. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH.)

ARTICLE FOURTH.

Different modes of passing from column at half distance, into line of battle.

1*st. Column at half distance, to the left* (or *right*) *into line of battle.*

501. A column at half distance having to form itself to the left (or right) into line of battle, the colonel will cause it to take distances by one of the means prescribed, Article IX., Part Third, of this school; which being executed, he will form the column into line of battle, as has been indicated, No. 390, and following:

502. If a column by company, at half distance, be in march, and it be necessary to form rapidly into line of battle, the colonel will command:

1. *By the rear of column left* (or *right*) *into line, wheel.*
2. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

503. At the first command, the right general guide will move rapidly to the front, and place himself a little beyond the point where the head of the column will rest, and on the prolongation of the guides. The captain of the eighth company will command: *Left into line, wheel;* the other captains will caution their companies to continue to march to the front.

504. At the command *march*, briskly repeated by the captain of the eighth company, the guide of this company will halt short, and the company will wheel to the left, conforming to the principles prescribed for wheeling from a halt; when its right shall arrive near the line, the captain will halt the company, and align it by the left. The other captains will place themselves briskly on the flank of the column; when the captain of the seventh sees there is sufficient distance between his company and the eighth to form the latter into line, he will command: *Left into line, wheel*—MARCH; the left guide will halt short, and facing to the rear, will place himself on the line; the company will wheel to the left, the man on the left of the front rank will face to the left, and place his breast against the left arm of the guide; the captain will halt the company when its right shall arrive near the line, and will align it by the left. The other companies will conform successively to what has just been prescribed for the seventh.

505. Each captain will direct the alignment of his company on the left man in the front rank of the company next on his right.

506. The lieutenant-colonel will be watchful that

the leading guide marches accurately on the prolongation of the line of battle, and direct himself on the right general guide. The major, placed in rear of the left guide of the eighth company, will, as soon as the guide of the seventh company is established on the direction, hasten in rear of the guides of the other companies, so as to assure each of them in succession on the line.

2d. Column at half distance, on the right (or *left*) *into line of battle.*

507. A column at half distance will form itself on the right (or left) into line of battle, as prescribed for a column at full distance.

3d. Column at half distance, forward, into line of battle.

508. If it be wished to form a column at half distance, forward into line of battle, the colonel will first cause it to close in mass and then deploy it on the leading company.

4th. Column at half distance, faced to the rear, into line of battle.

509. A column at half distance will be formed into line of battle, faced to the rear, as prescribed for a column at full distance.

Article Fifth.

Deployment of columns closed in mass.

511. When a column in mass, by division, arrives behind the line on which it is intended to deploy it, the colonel will indicate, in advance, to the lieutenant-colonel, the direction of the line of battle, as well as the point on which he may wish to direct the column. The lieutenant-colonel will immediately detach him-

self with two markers, and establish them on that line, the first at the point indicated, the second a little less than the front of a division from the first.

512. Deployments will always be made upon lines parallel, and lines perpendicular to the line of battle; consequently, if the head of the column be near the line of battle, the colonel will commence by establishing the direction of the column perpendicularly to that line, if it be not already so. If the column be in march, he will so direct it that it may arrive exactly behind the markers, perpendicularly to the line of battle, and halt it at three paces from that line.

513. The column, right in front, being halted, it is supposed that the colonel wishes to deploy it on the first division; he will order the left general guide to go to a point on the line of battle a little beyond that at which the left of the battalion will rest when deployed, and place himself correctly on the prolongation of the markers established before the first divison.

514. These dispositions being made, the colonel will command:

1. *On the first division, deploy column.* 2. *Battalion, left*—FACE.

515. At the first command, the chief of the first division will caution it to stand fast; the chiefs of the three other divisions will remind them that they will have to face to the left.

516. At the second command, the three last divisions will face to the left; the chief of each division will place himself by the side of its left guide, and the junior captain by the side of the covering sergeant of the left company, who will have stepped into the front rank.

517. At the same command, the lieutenant-colonel will place a third marker on the alignment of the two first, opposite to one of the three left files of the right company, first division, and then place himself on the

line of battle a few paces beyond the point at which the left of the second division will rest.

518. The colonel will then command:

3. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

519. At this command, the chief of the first division will go to its right, and command:

Right—DRESS.

520. At this, the division will dress up against the markers; the chief of the division, and its junior captain, will each align the company on his left, and then command:

FRONT.

521. The three divisions, faced to the left, will put themselves in march; the left guide of the second will direct himself parallelly to the line of battle; the left guides of the third and fourth divisions will march abreast with the guide of the second; the guides of the third and fourth, each preserving the prescribed distance between himself and the guide of the division which preceded his own in the column.

522. The chief of the second division will not follow its movement; he will see it file by him, and when its right guide shall be abreast with him, he will command:

1. *Second division.* 2. HALT. 3. FRONT.

523. The first command will be given when the division shall yet have seven or eight paces to march; the second, when the right guide shall be abreast with the chief of the division, and the third immediately after the second.

524. At the second command, the division will halt; at the third, it will face to the front, and if there be

openings between the files, the chief of the division will cause them to be promptly closed to the right; the left guides of both companies will step upon the line of battle, face to the right, and place themselves on the direction of the markers established before the first division, each guide opposite to one of the three left files of his company.

525. The division having faced to the front, its chief will place himself accurately on the line of battle, on the left of the first division; and when he shall see the guides assured on the direction, he will command, *Right*—DRESS. At this, the division will be aligned by the right, in the manner indicated for the first.

526. The third and fourth divisions will continue to march; at the command *halt*, given to the second, the chief of the third will halt in his own person, place himself exactly opposite to the guide of the second, after this division shall have faced to the front and closed its files; he will see his division file past, and when his right guide shall be abreast with him, he will command:

1. *Third division.* 2. HALT. 3. FRONT.

527. As soon as the division faces to the front, its chief will place himself two paces before its centre, and command:

1. *Third division, forward.* 2. *Guide right.* 3. MARCH.

528. At the third command, the division will march towards the line of battle; the right guide will so direct himself as to arrive by the side of the man on the left of the second division, and when the division is at three paces from the line of battle, its chief will halt it and align it by the right.

529. The chief of the fourth division will conform himself (and the chief of the fifth, if there be a fifth) to what has just been prescribed for the third.

530. The deployment ended, the colonel will command:

Guides—POSTS.

531. At this command, the guides will resume their places in line of battle, and the markers will retire.

532. If the column be in march, and the colonel shall wish to deploy it on the first division without halting the column, he will make the dispositions indicated, Nos. 512 and 513, and when the first division shall have arrived at three paces from the line, he will command:

1. *On the first division, deploy column.* 2. *Battalion by the left flank.* 3. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

533. At the first command, the chief of the first division will caution it to halt, and will command, *First division;* the other chiefs will caution their divisions to face by the left flank.

534. At the command *march*, briskly repeated by the chiefs of the rear divisions, the chief of the first division will command, HALT, and will align his division by the right against the markers; the other divisions will face to the left, their chiefs hastening to the left of their divisions. The second division will conform its movements to what is prescribed, Nos. 522 and following. The third and fourth divisions will execute what is prescribed, Nos. 526 and following; but the chief of each division will halt in his own person at the command march given by the chief of the division which precedes him, and when the right of his division arrives abreast of him, he will command:

Such division, by the right flank—MARCH.

536. If the colonel shall wish to deploy the column without halting it, and to continue the march, the markers will not be posted; the movement will be

executed by the same commands and the same means as the foregoing, but with the following modifications:

537. At the first command, the chief of the first division will command: 1. *Guide right.* 2. *Quick time.* At the command, *Double quick*—MARCH, given by the colonel, the first division will march in quick time and will take the touch of elbows to the right; the captains will place themselves on the right of their respective companies; the captain on the right of the battalion will take points on the ground to assure the direction of the march. The chief of the second division will allow his division to file past him, and when he sees its right abreast of him, he will command: 1. *Second division by the right flank.* 2. MARCH. 3. *Guide right;* and when this division shall arrive on the alignment of the first, he will cause it to march in quick time. The third and fourth divisions will deploy according to the same principles as the second.

538. The colonel, lieutenant colonel, major and color-bearer will conform themselves to what is prescribed, No. 458.

540. The column being at a halt, if, instead of deploying it on the first, the colonel shall wish to deploy it on the rearmost division, he will cause the dispositions to be made indicated No. 511 and following; but it will be the right general guide whom he will send to place himself beyond the point at which the right of the battalion will rest when deployed.

541. The colonel will then command:

1. *On the fourth* (or such) *division, deploy column.*
2. *Battalion, right*—FACE.

542. At the first command, the chief of the fourth division will caution it to stand fast; the chiefs of the other divisions will caution them that they will have to face to the right.

543. At the second command, the first three divisions will face to the right; and the chief of each will place himself by the side of its right guide.

544. At the same command, the lieutenant colonel will place a third marker between the first two, so that this marker may be opposite to one of the three right files of the left company of the division; the lieutenant colonel will then place himself on the line of battle a few paces beyond the point at which the right of the third division will rest when deployed.

545. The colonel will then command:

3. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

546. At this command, the three right divisions will put themselves in march, the guide of the first so directing himself as to pass three paces within the line marked by the right general guide. The chief of the third division will not follow its movement; he will see it file past, halt it when its left guide shall be abreast with him, and cause it to face to the front; and, if there be openings between the files, he will cause them to be promptly closed to the left.

547. The chief of the fourth division, when he sees it nearly unmasked by the three others, will command:

1. *Fourth division, forward.* 2. *Guide left.* 3. MARCH.

548. At the command *march*, which will be given the instant the fourth is unmasked, this division will approach the line of battle, and when at three paces from the markers on that line, its chief will halt it, and command:

Left—DRESS.

549. At this command, the division will dress forward against the markers; the chief of the division

and the junior captain will each align the company on his right, and then command:

FRONT.

550. The instant that the third division is unmasked, its chief will cause it to approach the line of battle, and halt it in the manner just prescribed for the fourth.

551. The moment the division halts, its right guide and the covering sergeant of its left company will step on the line of battle, placing themselves on the prolongation of the markers established in front of the fourth division; as soon as they shall be assured in their positions, the division will be aligned as has just been prescribed for the fourth.

552. The second and first divsions which will have continued to march, will, in succession, be halted and aligned by the left, in the same manner as the third; the chiefs of these divisions will conform themselves to what is prescribed, No. 526. The second being near the line of battle, the command will not be given for it to move on this line but it will be dressed up to it.

553. The deployment ended, the colonel will command:

Guides—POSTS.

556. If the column be in march, and the colonel shall wish to deploy it on the fourth division, he will make the dispositions indicated, No. 511 and following; and when the head of the column shall arrive within three paces of the line, he will command:

1. *On the fourth division, deploy column.* 2. *Battalion, by the right flank.* 3. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

563. To deploy the column on an interior division, the colonel will cause the line to be traced by the means

above indicated, and the general guides will move briskly on the line, as prescribed, Nos. 513 and 540. This being executed, the colonel will command:

1. *On such division, deploy column.* 2. *Battalion, outwards* —FACE. 3. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

564. Whether the column be with the right or left in front, the divisions which, in the order in battle, belong to the right of the directing one, will face to the right; the others, except the directing division, will face to the left.

565. The directing division, the instant it finds itself unmasked, will approach the line of battle, taking the guide left or right, according as the right or left of the column may be in front. The chief of this division will align it by the directing flank, and then step back into the rear, in order momentarily to give place to the chief of the next for aligning the next division.

567. If the column be in march, the colonel will command:

1. *On such division, deploy column.* 2. *Battalion, by the right and left flanks.* 3. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

PART FIFTH.

ARTICLE FIRST.

To advance in line of battle.

587. The battalion being correctly aligned, and supposed to be the directing one, when the colonel shall wish to march in line of battle, he will give the lieutenant colonel an intimation of his purpose, place himself about forty paces in rear of the color-file, and face to the front.

588. The lieutenant colonel will place himself a like distance in front of the same file, and face to the colonel, who will establish him as correctly as possible, by signal of the sword, perpendicularly to the line of battle opposite to the color-bearer. The colonel will next, above the heads of the lieutenant colonel and color-bearer, take a point of direction in the field beyond, if a distinct one present itself, exactly in the prolongation of those first two points.

589. The colonel will then move twenty paces farther to the rear, and establish two markers on the prolongation of the straight line passing through the color-bearer and the lieutenant colonel; these markers will face to the rear, the first placed about twenty-five paces behind the rear rank of the battalion, and the second at the same distance from the first.

590. The color-bearer will be instructed to take, the moment the lieutenant colonel shall be established on the perpendicular, two points on the ground in the straight line which, drawn from himself, would pass between the heels of that officer; the first of these points will be taken at fifteen or twenty paces from the color-bearer.

591. These dispositions being made, the colonel will command:

1. *Battalion, forward.*

592. At this, the front rank of the color-guard will advance six paces to the front; the corporals in the rear rank will place themselves in the front rank, and these will be replaced by those in the rank of file-closers; at the same time the two general guides will move in advance, abreast with the color-bearer, the one on the right, opposite to the captain of the right company, the other opposite to the sergeant who closes the left of the battalion.

593. The captains of the left wing will shift, passing before the front rank, to the left of their respective

companies; the sergeant on the left of the battalion will step back into the rear rank. The covering sergeant of the company next on the left of the color-company, will step into the front rank.

594. The lieutenant colonel having assured the color-bearer on the line between himself and the corporal of the color-file, now in the front rank, will go to the position which will be indicated, No. 602.

595. The major will place himself six or eight paces on either flank of the color-rank.

596. The colonel will then command:

2. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

597. At this command, the battalion will step off with life; the color-bearer, charged with the step and direction, will scrupulously observe the length and cadence of the pace, marching on the prolongation of the two points previously taken, and successively taking others in advance by the means indicated in the school of the company; the corporal on his right, and the one on his left, will march in the same step, taking care not to turn the head or shoulders, the color-bearer supporting the color-lance against the hip.

598. The two general guides will march in the same step with the color-rank, each maintaining himself abreast, or nearly so, with that rank, and neither occupying himself with the movement of the other.

599. The three corporals of the color-guard, now in the front rank of the battalion, will march well aligned, elbow to elbow, heads direct to the front, and without deranging the line of their shoulders; the centre one will follow exactly in the trace of the color-bearer, and maintain the same step, without lengthening or shortening it, except on an intimation from the colonel or lieutenant colonel, although he should find himself more or less than six paces from the color-rank.

600. The covering sergeant in the front rank between the color-company and the next on the left, will march elbow to elbow, and on the same line, with the three corporals in the centre, his head well to the front.

601. The captains of the color-company, and the company next to the left, will constitute, with the three corporals in the centre of the front rank, the basis of alignment for both wings of the battalion; they will march in the same step with the color-bearer, and exert themselves to maintain their shoulders exactly in the square with the direction. To this end, they will keep their heads direct to the front, only occasionally casting an eye on the three centre corporals, with the slightest possible turn of the neck, and if they perceive themselves in advance, or in rear of these corporals, the captain, or two captains, will almost insensibly shorten or lengthen the step, so as, at the end of several paces, to regain the true alignment, without giving sudden checks or impulsions to the wings beyond them respectively.

602. The lieutenant colonel, placed twelve or fifteen paces on the right of the captain of the color-company, will maintain this captain and the next one beyond, abreast with the three centre corporals; to this end, he will caution either to lengthen or to shorten the step as may be necessary, which the captain, or two captains, will execute as has just been explained.

603. All the other captains will maintain themselves on the prolongation of this basis; and, to this end, they will cast their eyes towards the centre, taking care to turn the neck but slightly, and not to derange the direction of their shoulders.

604. The captains will observe the march of their companies, and prevent the men from getting in advance of the line of captains; they will not lengthen or shorten step except when evidently necessary; because to correct, with too scrupulous attention, small

faults, is apt to cause the production of greater—loss of calmness, silence and equality of step, each of which it is so important to maintain.

605. The men will constantly keep their heads well directed to the front, feel lightly the elbow towards the centre, resist pressure coming from the flank, give the greatest attention to the squareness of the shoulders, and hold themselves always very slightly behind the line of the captains, in order never to shut out from the view of the latter the basis of alignment; they will, from time to time, cast an eye on the color-rank, or on the general guide of the wing, in order to march constantly in the same step with those advanced persons.

606. Pending the march, the line determined by the two markers (*h* and *d*) will be prolonged by placing, in proportion as the battalion advances, a third marker (*i*) in the rear of the first (*h*). then the marker (*d*) will quit his place and go a like distance in rear of (*i*); the marker (*h*) will, in his turn, do the like in respect to (*d*), and so on, in succession, as long as the battalion continues to advance; each marker, on shifting position, taking care to face to the rear, and to cover accurately the two markers already established on the direction. A staff officer, or the quartermaster sergeant, designated for the purpose, and who will hold himself constantly fifteen or twenty paces facing the marker farthest from the battalion, will caution each marker when to shift place, and assure him on the direction behind the other two.

Article Third.

To halt the battalion, marching in line of battle, and to align it.

635. The battalion, marching in the line of battle,

when the colonel shall wish to halt it, he will command:

1. *Battalion.* 2. HALT.

636. At the second command, the battalion will halt; the color-rank and the general guides will remain in front; but if the colonel should not wish immediately to resume the advance in line, nor to give a general alignment, he will command:

Color and general guides—POSTS.

637. At this command, the color-rank and general guides will retake their places in line of battle, the captains in the left wing will shift to the right of their companies.

638. If the colonel should then judge it necessary to rectify the alignment, he will command:

Captains, rectify the alignment.

639. The captains will immediately cast an eye towards the centre, align themselves accurately on the basis of the alignment, which the lieutenant colonel will see well directed, and then promptly dress their respective companies. The lieutenant colonel will admonish such captains as may not be accurately on the alignment by the command: *Captain of* (such) *company, or captains of* (such) *companies, move up or fall back.*

640. But when the colonel shall wish to give the battalion a general alignment, either parallel or oblique, instead of rectifying it as above, he will move some paces outside of one of the general guides (the right will here be supposed) and caution the right general guide and the color-bearer to face him, and then establish them, by signal of the sword, on the direction which he may wish to give to the batta-

lion. As soon as they shall be correctly established, the left general guide will place himself on their direction, and be assured in his position by the major. The color-bearer will carry the color-lance perpendicularly between his eyes, and the two corporals of his rank will return to their places in the front rank the moment he shall face to the colonel.

641. This disposition being made, the colonel will command:

1. *Guides*—On the line.

642. At this command, the right guide of each company in the right wing, and the left guide of each company in the left, will each place himself on the direction of the color-bearer and the two general guides, face to the color-bearer, place himself in rear of the guide who is next before him at a distance equal to the front of his company, and align himself upon the color-bearer and the general guide beyond.

643. The captains in the right wing will shift to the left of their companies, except the captain of the color company, who will remain on its right, but step into the rear rank; the captains in the left wing will shift to the right of their companies.

644. The lieutenant colonel will promptly rectify, if necessary, the positions of the guides of the right wing, and the major those of the other; which being executed, the colonel will command:

2. *On the centre*—Dress.

645. At this command, the companies will move up in quick time against the guides, where, having arrived, each captain will align his company according to prescribed principles, the lieutenant colonel aligning the color-company.

646. If the alignment be oblique, the captains will

take care to conform their companies to it in conducting them towards the line.

647. The battalion being aligned, the colonel will command:

3. *Color and guides*—Posts.

648. At this command, the color-bearer, the general and company guides, and the captains in the right wing, will take their places in the line of battle, and the color-bearer will replace the heel of the color-lance against the right hip.

Article Fifth.

To march in retreat, in line of battle.

664. The battalion being halted, if it be the wish of the colonel to cause it to march in retreat, he will command:

1. *Face to the rear.* 2. *Battalion, about*—Face.

665. At the second command, the battalion will face about; the color-rank, and the general guides, if in advance, will take their places in line; the color-bearer will pass into the rear rank, now leading; the corporal of his file will step behind the corporal next on his own right, to let the color-bearer pass, and then step into the front rank, now rear, to re-form the color-file; the colonel will place himself behind the front rank, become the rear; the lieutenant colonel and major will place themselves before the rear rank, now leading.

666. The colonel will take post forty paces behind the color-file, in order to assure the lieutenant colonel on the perpendicular, who will place himself at a like

distance in front, as prescribed for the advance in line of battle.

667. If the battalion be the one charged with the direction, the colonel will establish markers in the manner indicated, No. 589, except that they will face to the battalion, and that the first will be placed twenty-five paces from the lieutenant colonel. If the markers be already established, the officer charged with replacing them in succession will cause them to face about, the moment that the battalion executes this movement, and then the marker nearest to the battalion will hasten to the rear of the two others.

668. These dispositions being made, the colonel will command:

3. *Battalion, forward.*

669. At this command, the color-bearer will advance six paces beyond the rank of file closers, accompanied by the two corporals of his guard of that rank, the centre corporal stepping back to let the color-bearer pass; the two file closers nearest this centre corporal will unite on him behind the color-guard to serve as a basis of alignment for the line of file closers; the two general guides will place themselves abreast with the color rank, the covering sergeants will place themselves in the line of file closers, and the captains in the rear rank, now leading; the captains in the left wing, now right, will, if not already there, shift to the left of their companies, now become the right.

670. The colonel will then command:

4. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

671. The battalion will march in retreat on the same principles which govern the advance in line; the centre corporal behind the color-bearer will march exactly in his trace.

Article Sixth.

To halt the battalion marching in retreat, and to face it to the front.

676. The colonel having halted the battalion, and wishing to face it to the front, will command:

1. *Face to the front.* 2. *Battalion, about*—Face.

677. At the second command, the color-rank, general guides, captains, and covering sergeants, will all retake their habitual places in line of battle, and the color-bearer will repass into the front rank.

678. The battalion marching in line of battle by the front rank, when the colonel shall wish to march it in retreat, he will command:

1. *Battalion, right about.* 2. March.

679. At the command *march*, the battalion will face to the rear and move off at the same gait by the rear rank. The principles prescribed Nos. 669 and following will be carefully observed.

680. If the colonel should wish the battalion to march again by the front, he will give the same commands.

Article Eighth.

Passage of obstacles, advancing and retreating.

682. The battalion advancing in line will be supposed to encounter an obstacle which covers one or more companies: the colonel will cause them to ploy into column at full distance, in rear of the next company towards the color, which will be executed in the

following manner. It will be supposed that the obstacle only covers the third company, the colonel will command:

Third company, obstacle.

683. At this command, the captain of the third company will place himself in its front, turn to it, and command: 1. *Third company, by the left flank, to the rear into column.* 2. *Double quick.* 3. MARCH. He will then hasten to the left of his company.

684. At the command *march*, the company will face to the left in marching; the two left files will promptly disengage to the rear in double quick time; the left guide, placing himself at the head of the front rank, will conduct it behind the fourth company, directing himself parallelly with this company; the captain of the third will himself halt opposite to the captain of the fourth, and see his company file past; when its right file shall be nearly up with him, he will command: 1. *Third company.* 2. *By the right flank.* 3. MARCH. 4. *Guide right*, and place himself before the centre of his company.

685. At the command *march*, the company will face to the right, preserving the same gait, but the moment it shall be at the prescribed distance, its captain will command:

1. *Quick time.* 2. MARCH.

686. This company will thus follow in column that behind which it finds itself, and at wheeling distance, its right guide marching exactly in the trace of the captain of that company.

687. As soon as the third company shall have faced to the left, the left guide of the second will place himself on the left of the front rank of his company, and maintain between himself and the right of the fourth the space necessary for the return into line of the third.

688. The obstacle being passed, the colonel will command:

Third company, forward, into line.

689. At this command, the captain turning to his company, will add:

1. *By company, right half wheel.* 2. *Double quick.* 3. MARCH.

690. At the command *march*, the company will take the double quick step, and execute a half wheel; its captain will then command, 1. *Forward.* 2. MARCH. 3. *Guide left.* The second command will be given when the company shall have sufficiently wheeled.

691. At the command *march*, the company will direct itself straight forwards towards the line of battle, and retake its position in it according to the principles prescribed for the formation forward into line of battle.

692. It will be supposed that the obstacle covers several contiguous companies (the three companies on the right for example), the colonel will command:

1. *Three right companies, obstacle.* 2. *By the left flank, to the rear, into column.* 3. *Double quick*—MARCH.

693. At the first command, the captains of the designated companies will each place himself before the centre of his company, and caution it as to the movement about to be executed.

694. At the command *march*, the designated companies will face to the left in marching, and immediately take the double quick step; each captain will cause the head of his company to disengage itself to the rear, and the left guide will place himself at the head of the front rank; the captain of the third company will conform himself to what is prescribed, No. 684 and following; the captains of the other compa-

nies will conduct them by the flank in rear of the third, inclining towards the head of the column; and, as the head of each company arrives opposite to the right of the one next before it in column, its captain will himself halt, see his company file past, and conform himself for facing it to the front, in marching, to what is prescribed No. 684 and following.

695. When the last company in column shall have passed the obstacle, the colonel will command:

1. *Three right companies, forward, into line.*

696. At this command, the captain of each of these three companies will command: *By company, right half wheel.* The colonel will then add:

1. *Double quick.* 2. MARCH.

697. At this, briskly repeated by the captains of the three companies, each company will conform itself to what is prescribed No. 690 and following.

698. It is supposed, in the foregoing examples, that the companies belonged to the right wing; if they make part of the other, they will execute the passage of an obstacle according to the same principles and by inverse means.

699. When flank companies are broken off to pass an obstacle, the general guide on that flank will place himself six paces in front of the outer file of the nearest company to him remaining in line.

700. In the preceding movements, it has been supposed that the battalion was marching in quick time, but if it be marching in double quick time, and the colonel shall wish to cause several contiguous companies to break to the rear, he will first order the battalion to march in quick time; the companies will break as indicated No. 692.

706. When the color-company shall be obliged to execute the movement of passing an obstacle, the

color-rank will return into line at the moment the company shall face to the left or right; the major will place himself six paces before the extremity of the company behind which the color-company marches in column, in order to give the step and the direction; he, himself, first taking the step from the battalion.

Article Ninth.

To pass a defile, in retreat, by the right or left flank.

709. When a battalion, retiring in line, shall encounter a defile which it must pass, the colonel will halt the battalion, and face it to the front.

710. It will be supposed that the defile is in rear of the left flank, and that its width is sufficient to give passage to a column by platoon; the colonel will place a marker fifteen or twenty paces in rear of the file closers at the point around which the subdivisions will have to change direction in order to enter the defile; he will then command:

To the rear, by the right flank, pass the defile.

711. The captain of the first company will immediately command:

1. *First company, right*—Face. 2. March (or *double-quick*—March.)

712. At the command *march*, the first company will commence the movement; the first file will wheel to the right, march to the rear till it shall have passed four paces beyond the file closers, when it will wheel again to the right, and then direct itself straight forward towards the left flank. All the other files of this com-

pany will come to wheel in succession at the same place where the first had wheeled.

713. The second company will execute, in its turn, the same movement, by the commands of its captain, who will give the command MARCH, so that the first file of his company may immediately follow the last of the first, without constraint, however, as to taking the step of the first; the first file of the second company will wheel to the right, on its ground; all the other files of this company will come in succession to wheel at the same place. The following companies will execute, each in its turn, what has just been prescribed for the second.

714. When the whole of the second company shall be on the same direction with the first, the captain of the first will cause it to form, by platoon, into line, and the moment that it is in column, the guide of the first platoon will direct himself on the marker around whom he has to change direction in order to enter the defile.

715. The second company will continue to march by the flank, directing itself parallelly with the line of battle; and it, in its turn, will form by platoon into line, when the third company shall be wholly on the same direction with itself.

716. The following companies will successively execute what has just been prescribed for the second.

717. The first platoon of the leading company having arrived opposite to the marker placed at the entrance of the defile, will turn to the left, and the following platoons will all execute this movement at the same point. As the last companies will not be able to form platoons before reaching the defile, they will so direct themselves, in entering it, as to leave room to the left for this movement.

718. The battalion will thus pass the defile by platoon; and, as the two platoons of each company shall clear it, companies will be successively formed.

719. The head of the column having cleared the

defile, and having reached the distance at which the colonel wishes to re-form line faced to the defile, he may cause the leading company to turn to the left, to prolong the column in that direction, and then form it to the left into line of battle; or he may halt the column, and form it into line of battle faced to the rear.

720. If the defile be in the rear of the right flank, it will be passed by the left; the movement will be executed according to the same principles, and by inverse means.

721. If the defile be too narrow to receive the front of a platoon, it will be passed by the flank.

Article Tenth.

To march by the flank.

722. The colonel, wishing the battalion to march by the flank, will command:

1. *Battalion.* 2. *Right* (or *left*)—Face. 3. *Forward.* 4. March (or *double quick*—March).

723. At the second command, the captains and covering sergeants will place themselves as prescribed, Nos. 136 and 141, school of the company.

724. The sergeant on the left of the battalion will place himself to the left and by the side of the last file of his company, covering the captains in file.

725. The battalion having to face by the left flank, the captains, at the second command, will shift rapidly to the left of their companies, and each place himself by the side of the covering sergeant of the company preceding his own, except the captain of the left company, who will place himself by the side of the ser-

geant on the left of the battalion. The covering sergeant of the right company will place himself by the right side of the front rank man of the rearmost file of his company, covering the captains in file.

726. At the command *march*, the battalion will step off with life; the sergeant, placed before the leading file (right or left in front), will be careful to preserve exactly the length and cadence of the step, and to direct himself straight forward; to this end, he will take points on the ground.

727. Whether the battalion march by the right or left flank, the lieutenant colonel will place himself abreast with the leading file, and the major abreast with the color-file, both on the side of the front rank, and about six paces from it.

728. The adjutant, placed between the lieutenant colonel and the front rank, will march in the same step with the head of the battalion, and the sergeant major, placed between the major and the color-bearer, will march in the same step with the adjutant.

729. The captains and file closers will carefully see that the files neither open out, nor close too much, and that they regain insensibly their distances, if lost.

730. The colonel, wishing the battalion to wheel by file, will command:

1. *By file right* (or *left*). . 2. MARCH.

731. The files will wheel in succession, and all at the place where the first had wheeled, in conforming to the principles prescribed in the school of the company.

732. The battalion marching by the flank, when the colonel shall wish it to halt, he will command:

1. *Battalion.* 2. HALT. 3. FRONT.

733. These commands will be executed as prescribed in the school of the company, No. 146.

734. If the battalion be marching by the flank, and the colonel should wish to cause it to march in line, either to the front or to the rear, the movements will be executed by the commands and means prescribed in the school of the company.

Article Eleventh.

To form the battalion on the right or left, by file, into line of battle.

735. The battalion marching by the right flank, when the colonel shall wish to form it on the right by file, he will determine the line of battle, and the lieutenant colonel will place two markers on that line, in conformity with what is prescribed, No. 415.

736. The head of the battalion being nearly up with the first marker, the colonel will command:

1. *On the right, by file, into line.* 2. March (or *double quick*—March.)

737. At the command *march*, the leading company will form itself on the right, by file, into line of battle, as indicated in the school of the company, No. 149: the front rank man of the first file will rest his breast lightly against the right arm of the first marker; the other companies will follow the movement of the leading company; each captain will place himself on the line at the same time with the front rank man of his first file, and on the right of this man.

738. The left guide of each company, except the leading one, will place himself on the direction of the markers, and opposite to the left file of his company, at the instant that the front rank man of this file arrives on the line.

739. The formation being ended, the colonel will command:

Guides—Posts.

740. The colonel will superintend the successive formation of the battalion, moving along the front of the line of battle.

741. The lieutenant colonel will, in succession, assure the direction of the guides, and see that the men of the front rank, in placing themselves on the line, do not pass it.

Article Twelfth.

Changes of front.

Change of front perpendicularly forward.

743. The battalion being in line of battle, it is supposed to be the wish of the colonel to cause a change of front forward on the right company, and that the angle formed by the old and new positions be a right angle, or a few degrees more or less than one; he will cause two markers to be placed on the new direction, before the position to be occupied by that company, and order its captain to establish it against the markers.

744. The captain of the right company will immediately direct it upon the markers by a wheel to the right on the fixed pivot; and after having halted it, he will align it by the right.

745. These dispositions being made, the colonel will command:

1. *Change front forward on first company.* 2. *By company, right half wheel.* 3. March (or *double quick*—March).

746. At the second command, each captain will place himself before the centre of his company.

747. At the third, each company will wheel to the right on the fixed pivot; the left guide of each will place himself on its left as soon as he shall be able to pass; and when the colonel shall judge that the companies have sufficiently wheeled, he will command:

4. *Forward.* 5. MARCH. 6. *Guide right.*

748. At the fifth command, the companies ceasing to wheel will march straight forward; at the sixth, the men will touch elbows towards the right.

749. The right guide of the second company will march straight forward until this company shall arrive at the point where it should turn to the right; each succeeding right guide will follow the file immediately before him at the cessation of the wheel, and will march in the trace of this file until this company shall turn to the right to move upon the line; this guide will then march straight forward.

750. The second company having arrived opposite to the left file of the first, its captain will cause it to turn to the right; the right guide will direct himself so as to arrive squarely upon the line of battle, and when he shall be at three paces from that line, the captain will command:

1. *Second company.* 2. HALT.

751. At the second command, the company will halt; the files not yet in line with the guide will come into it promptly, the left guide will place himself on the line of battle, and as soon as he is assured in the direction by the lieutenant colonel, the captain will align the company by the right.

752. Each following company will conform to what has just been prescribed for the second.

753. The formation ended, the colonel will command:

Guides—POSTS.

754. If the battalion be in march, and the colonel shall wish to change front forward on the first company, and that the angle formed by the old and new positions be a right angle, he will cause two markers to be placed on the new direction, before the position to be occupied by that company, and will command:

1. *Change front forward on first company.* 2. *By company, right half wheel.* 3. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

755. At the first command, the captains will move rapidly before the centre of their respective companies: the captain of the first company will command: 1. *Right turn;* 2. *Quick time;* the captains of the other companies will caution them to wheel to the right.

756. At the command *march*, the first company will turn to the right, according to the principles prescribed in the school of the soldier, No. 402; its captain will halt it at three paces from the markers, and the files in rear will promptly come into line. The captain will align the company by the right.

757. Each of the other companies will wheel to the right on a fixed pivot; the left guides will place themselves on the left of their respective companies, and when the colonel shall judge they have wheeled sufficiently, he will command:

4. *Forward.* 5. MARCH. 6. *Guide right.*

759. The colonel will cause the battalion to change front forward on the eighth company, according to the same principles and by inverse means.

Change of front perpendicularly to the rear.

760. The colonel, wishing to change front to the rear on the right company, will impart his purpose to the captain of this company. The latter will immediately face his company about, wheel it to the left on the fixed pivot, and halt it when it shall be in the direction indicated to him by the colonel; the captain will then face his company to the front, and align it by the right against the two markers, whom the colonel will cause to be established before the right and left files.

761. These dispositions being made, the colonel will command:

1. *Change front to the rear, on first company.* 2. *Battalion, about*—FACE. 3. *By company, left half wheel.* 4. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

762. At the second command, all the companies, except the right, will face about.

763. At the third, the captains, whose companies have faced about, will each place himself behind the centre of his company, two paces from the front rank, now the rear.

764. At the fourth, these companies will wheel to the left on the fixed pivot by the rear rank; the left guide of each will, as soon as he is able to pass, place himself on the left of the rear rank of his company, now become the right; and when the colonel shall judge that the companies have sufficiently wheeled, he will command:

5. *Forward.* 6. MARCH. 7. *Guide left.*

765. At the sixth command, the companies will cease to wheel, march straight forward towards the new line of battle, and, at the seventh, take the touch of the elbow towards the left.

767. The second company, from the right, having

arrived opposite to the left of the first, will turn to the left; the guide will so direct himself as to arrive parallelly with the line of battle, cross that line, and when the front rank, now in the rear, shall be three paces beyond it, the captain will command: 1. *Second company;* 2. HALT.

768. At the second command, the company will halt; the files which may not yet be in line with the guide, will promptly come into it; the captain will cause the company to face about, and then align it by the right.

769. All the other companies will execute what has just been prescribed for the second, each as it successively arrives opposite to the left of the company that precedes it on the new line of battle.

770. The formation being ended, the colonel will command:

Guides—POSTS.

771. The colonel will cause a change of front on the left company of the battalion to the rear, according to the same principles and by inverse means.

ARTICLE THIRTEENTH.

To ploy the battalion into column doubled on the centre.

776. This movement consists in ploying the corresponding companies of the right and left wings into column at company distance, or closed in mass, in rear of the two centre companies, according to the principles prescribed, Article Third, Part Second, of this School.

777. The colonel, wishing to form the double column at company distance, (the battalion being in line of battle,) will command:

1. *Double column, at half distance.* 2. *Battalion, inwards*—FACE. 3. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

778. At the first command, the captains will place themselves two paces in front of their respective companies; the captains of the two centre companies will caution them to stand fast, and the other captains will caution their companies to face to the left and right, respectively. The covering sergeants will step into the front rank.

779. At the second command, the fourth and fifth companies will stand fast; the others of the right wing will face to the left, and the others of the left wing will face to the right; each captain whose company has faced, will hasten to break to the rear the two files at the head of his company; the left guide of each right company, and the right guide of each left company, will each place himself at the head of its front rank, and the captain by the side of his guide.

780. At the command *march*, the fourth and fifth companies, which are to form the first division, will stand fast; the senior captain of the two will place himself before the centre of the division, and command: *Guide right;* the junior captain will place himself in the interval between the two companies, and the left guide of the left company will place himself in the front rank on the left of the division, as soon as he shall be able to pass.

781. All the other companies, conducted by their captains, will step off with life to arrange themselves in column at company distance, each company behind the preceding one in the column of the same wing, so that, in the right wing, the third may be next behind the fourth, the second next to the third, and so on to the right company; and in the left wing, the sixth may be next behind the fifth, the seventh next to the sixth, and so on to the left company of the battalion.

782. The corresponding companies of the two wings will unite into divisions in arranging themselves in column; an instant before the union, at the centre of the column, the left guides of right companies will

pass into the line of file closers, and each captain will command: 1. *Such company.* 2. *Halt.* 3. FRONT.

783. At the second command, which will be given at the instant of union, each company will halt; at the third, it will face to the front. The senior captain in each division will place himself on its right, and command, *Right*—DRESS, and the junior captain will place himself in the interval between the two companies. The division being aligned, its chief will command FRONT, and take his position two paces before its centre.

784. The column being thus formed, the divisions will take the respective denominations of *first, second, third, &c.*, according to position in the column, beginning at the front.

785. The lieutenant-colonel, who, at the second command given by the colonel, will have placed himself at a little more than comppany distance in rear of the right guide of the first division, will assure the right guides on the direction as they successively arrive, by placing himself in their rear.

786. The music will pass to the rear of the column.

787. The battalion being in march, to form the double column at company distance without halting the battalion, the colonel will command:

1. *Double column at half distance.* 2. *Battalion by the right and left flanks.* 3. MARCH (*or double quick*—MARCH).

788. At the first command, each captain will move briskly in front of the centre of his company; the captains of the fourth and fifth will caution their companies to march straight forward; the other captains will caution their companies to face to the right and left.

789. At the command *march*, the fourth and fifth companies will continue to march straight forward;

the senior captain will place himself before the centre of his division and command: *Guide right;* the junior captain will place himself in the interval between the two companies. The left guide of the fifth company will place himself on the left of the front rank of the division. The men will take the touch of elbows to the right. The color and general guides will retake their places. The three right companies will face to the left, and the three left companies will face to the right. Each captain will break to the rear two files at the head of his company; the left guides of the right companies, and the right guides of the left companies, will each place himself at the head of the front rank of his company, and the captain by the side of his guide.

790. The third and sixth companies will enter the column and direct themselves parallelly to the first division. Each of the other companies will, in like manner, place itself behind the company of the wing to which it belongs, and will be careful to gain as much ground as possible towards the head of the colnmn.

791. The corresponding companies of each wing will unite into divisions on taking their positions in column, and each captain, the instant the head of his company arrives at the centre of the column, will command: 1. *Such company, by the right* (or *left*) *flank.* 2. MARCH. The senior captain of the two companies will place himself in front of the centre of his division, and command: *Guide right;* the junior captain will place himself in the interval between the two companies. The two companies thus formed into a division will take the touch of elbows to the right, and when each division has gained its proper distance, its chief will cause it to march in quick time.

793. The double column, closed in mass, will be formed according to the same principles and by the same commands, substituting the indication, *closed in mass,* for that of *at half distance.*

Deployment of the double column, faced to the front.

796. The colonel, wishing to deploy the double column, will place a marker respectively before the right and left files of the first division, and a third before the left file of the right company, same division; which being done he will cause the two general guides to spring out on the alignment of the markers a little beyond the points at which the respective flanks of the battalion ought to rest; he will then command:

1. *Deploy column.* 2. *Battalion outwards*—FACE. 3. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

797. The column will deploy itself on the two companies at its head, according to the principles prescribed for the deployment of columns in mass. The captains of these companies will each, at the command *march*, place himself on the right of his own company, and align it by the right; the captain of the fourth will then place himself in the rear rank, and the covering sergeant in the rank of file closers, at the moment the captain of the third shall come to its left to align it.

798. The deployment being ended, the colonel will command:

Guides—POSTS.

800. The battalion being in double column and in march, if the colonel shall wish to deploy it without halting the column, he will cause three markers to be posted on the line of battle, and when the head of the column shall arrive near the markers, he will command:

1. *Deploy column.* 2. *Battalion, by the right and left flanks.* 3. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

801. The column will deploy on the two leading companies, according to the principles prescribed for the deployment of a close column, No. 533 and following; at the command *march*, the chief of the first divisions will halt it, and the captains of the fourth and fifth companies will align their companies by the right.

802. If the column be in march, and it be the wish of the colonel to deploy the column and to continue to march in the order of battle, he will not cause markers to be established at the head of the column. At the first command, the chief of the first division will command, *Quick time.* At the command *march*, the first division will continue to march in quick time; the colonel will command, *Guide centre.* The captains of the fourth and fifth companies, the color, and the men, will immediately conform to the principles of the march in line of battle. The companies will take the quick step by the command of their captains, as they successively arrive in line. The movement completed, the colonel may cause the battalion to march in double quick time.

To form the double column into line of battle, faced to the right or left.

803. The double column, being at company distance and at a halt, may be formed into line of battle faced to the right or left; when the colonel shall wish to form it faced to the right, he will command:

1. *Right into line wheel, left companies on the right into line.* 2. *Battalion, guide right.* 3. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

804. At the first command, each captain will place himself before the centre of his company; the right companies will be cautioned that they will have to

wheel to the right into line, the left companies that they will have to march straight forward.

805. At the second command, the left guide of the fourth company will place himself briskly on the direction of the right guides of the column, face to them, and opposite to one of the three last files of his company when in line of battle; the lieutenant colonel will assure him in that position.

806. At the command *march*, briskly repeated by all the captains, the right companies will form *to* the right into line of battle, the left companies will put themselves in march in order to form *on* the right into line of battle; the lieutenant colonel will assure the guides of the left wing on the line of battle as they successively come upon it.

Article Fourteenth.

Dispositions against Cavalry.

817. A battalion being in column by company, at full distance, right in front, and at a halt, when the colonel shall wish to form it into square, he will first cause divisions to be formed; which being done, he will command:

1. *To form square.* 2. *To half distance, close column.* 3. March (or *double quick*—March).

818. At the command *march*, the column will close to company distance, the second division taking its distance from the rear rank of the first division.

819. At the moment of halting the fourth division, the file closers of each company of which it is composed, passing by the outer flank of their companies, will place themselves two paces before the front rank opposite to their respective places in line of battle, and face towards the head of the column.

820. At the commencement of the movement, the major will place himself on the right of the column abreast with the first division; the buglers formed in two ranks will place themselves at platoon distance, behind the inner platoons of the second division.

821. These dispositions being made, the colonel may, according to circumstances, put the column in march, or cause it to form square; if he wish to do the latter, he will command:

1. *Form square.* 2. *Right and left into line, wheel.*

822. At the first command, the lieutenant colonel, facing to the left guides, and the major, facing to those of the right, will align them, from the front, on the respective guides of the fourth division, who will stand fast, holding up their pieces, inverted, perpendicularly; the right guides, in placing themselves on the direction, will take their exact distances.

823. At the second command, the chief of the first division will caution it to stand fast; all the captains of the second and third divisions will place themselves before the centres of their respective companies, and caution them that they will have to wheel, the right companies to the right, and the left companies to the left into line of battle.

824. The color-bearer will step back into the line of file closers, opposite to his place in line of battle, and will be replaced by the corporal of his file, who is in the rear rank; the corporal of the same file who is in the rank of file closers will step into the rear rank.

825. The chief of the fourth division will command: 1. *Fourth division, forward;* 2. *Guide left*, and place himself at the same time two paces outside of its left flank.

826. These dispositions ended, the colonel will command:

MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

827. At this command, briskly repeated, the first division will stand fast; but its right file will face to the right, and its left file to the left.

828. The companies of the second and third divisions will wheel to the right and left into line, and the buglers will advance a space equal to the front of a company.

829. The fourth division will close up to form the square, and when it shall have closed, its chief will halt it, face it about, and align it by the rear rank upon the guides of the division, who will, for this purpose, remain faced to the front. The junior captain will pass into the rear rank, now become the front, and the covering sergeant of the left company will place himself behind him in the front rank, become rear. The file closers will, at the same time, close up a pace on the front rank, and the outer file on each flank of the division will face outwards.

830. The square being formed, the colonel will command:

Guides—Posts.

831. At this command, the chiefs of the first and fourth divisions, as well as the guides, will enter the square.

832. The captains whose companies have formed to the right into line, will remain on the left of their companies; the left guide of each of those companies will, in the rear rank, cover his captain, and the covering sergeant of each will place himself as a file closer behind the right file of his company.

833. The field and staff will enter the square, the lieutenant colonel placing himself behind the left, and the major behind the right of the first division.

834. If the battalion present ten, instead of eight companies, the fourth division will make the same movements prescribed above for the second and third

divisions, and the fifth, the movements prescribed for the fourth division.

835. A battalion ought never to present, near the enemy's cavalry, an odd company. The odd company, under that circumstance, ought, when the battalion is under arms, to be consolidated, for the time, with the other companies.

836. The fronts of the square will be designated as follows: The first division will always be the *first front;* the last division, the *fourth front;* the right companies of the other divisions will form the *second front;* and the left companies of the same divisions the *third front.*

843. If the battalion, before the square is formed, be in double column, the two leading companies will form the first front, the two rear companies the fourth; the other companies of the right half battalion will form the second, and those of the left half battalion the third front.

844. The first and fourth fronts will be commanded by the chiefs of the first and fourth divisions; each of the other two by its senior captain.

845. The commander of each front will place himself four paces behind its present rear rank, and will be replaced momentarily in the command of his company by the next in rank therein.

847. If the column by division, whether double or simple, be in mass, and the colonel shall wish to form it into square, he will first cause it to take company distance; to this effect, he will command:

1. *To form square.* 2. *By the head of column, take half distance.*

849. The colonel will halt the column the moment the third division shall have its distance. As soon as the column is halted, the dispositions indicated, No. 819, will be executed, and when these are completed, the colonel may proceed to form square.

854. The battalion being formed into square, when the colonel shall wish to cause it to advance a distance less than thirty paces, he will command:

1. *By* (such) *front, forward.* 2. MARCH.

855. If it be supposed that the advance be made by the first front, the chief of this front will command:

1. *First division, forward.* 2. *Guide centre.*

856. The chief of the second front will face his front to the left. The captains of the companies composing this front will place themselves outside, and on the right of their left guides, who will replace them in the front rank; the chief of the third front will face his front to the right, and the captains in this front will place themselves outside, and on the left of their covering sergeants; the chief of the fourth front will face his front about, and command: 1. *Fourth division, forward;* 2. *Guide centre.* The captain, who is in the centre of the first front, will be charged with the direction of the march.

857. At the command *march*, the square will put itself in motion; the companies marching by the flank will be careful not to lose their distances. The chief of the fourth division will cause his division to keep constantly closed on the flanks of the second and third fronts.

857. This movement will only be executed in quick time.

858. The lieutenant colonel will place himself in rear of the file of direction, in order to regulate his march.

860. If the colonel should wish to halt the square, he will command:

1. *Battalion.* 2. HALT.

861. At the second command, the square will halt; the fourth front will face about immediately, and without further command: the second and third fronts will face outwards; the captains of companies will resume their places as in square.

862. In moving the square forward by the second, third or fourth fronts, the same rules will be observed.

863. The battalion being formed into square, when the colonel shall wish to cause it to advance a greater distance than thirty paces, he will command:

1. *Form column.*

864. The chief of the first front will command:

1. *First division, forward.* 2. *Guide left.*

865. The commander of the fourth front will caution it to stand fast; the commander of the second front will cause it to face to the left, and then command, *By company, by file left.* The commander of the third front will cause it to face to the right, and then command, *By company, by file right.* At the moment the second and third fronts face to the left and right, each captain will cause it to break to the rear the two leading files of his company.

866. These dispositions being made, the colonel will command:

3. March—(or *double quick*—March).

867. At this command, the first front will march forward; its chief will halt it when it shall have advanced a space equal to half its front, and align it by the left.

868. The corresponding companies of the second and third fronts will wheel by file to the left and right, and march to meet each other behind the centre of the first division, and the moment they unite, the captain of each company will halt his company and

face it to the front. The division being re-formed, its chief will align it by the left.

869. The commander of the fourth front will cause it to face about; its file-closers will remain before the front rank.

870. The column being thus re-formed, the colonel may put it in march; the right guides will preserve company distance exactly as the directing guides.

871. When the colonel shall wish to re-form square, he will give the necessary commands.

872. To cause the square to march in retreat, the colonel will first cause column to be formed; and when formed, he will cause it to face by the rear rank; to this end, he will command:

1. *To march in retreat.* 2. *Face by the rear rank.* 3. *Battalion about*—FACE.

873. At the second command, the file closers of the interior divisions will place themselves, passing by the outer flanks of their respective companies, behind the front rank opposite to their places in line of battle; the file closers of the other divisions will stand fast.

874. At the third command, the battalion will face about; each chief of division will place himself before its rear rank, become front, passing through the interval between its two companies; the guides will step into the rear rank, now front.

875. The column being thus disposed, the colonel may put it in march, or cause it to form square, as if it were faced by the front rank. The square being formed, its fronts will preserve the same designations they had when faced by the front rank.

876. The battalion being in square by the rear rank, when the colonel shall wish to march it in retreat or in advance, a distance less than thirty paces, he will conform to what is prescribed, No. 854 and following; otherwise, he will re-form the column according to the

principles prescribed, No. 863, by marching forward the fourth front.

877. If the square is to be marched to the front a distance greater than thirty paces, the colonel will face the column by the front rank; to this end, he will command:

1. *To march in advance.* 2. *Face by the front rank.* 3. *Battalion about*—FACE.

879. If the column be marching in advance, and the colonel shall wish to march it in retreat, he will command:

1. *To march in retreat.* 2. *Battalion right about.* 3. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

880. At the second command, the file closers of the second and third divisions will place themselves rapidly before the front rank of their respective divisions. At the command *march*, the column will face about and move off to the rear.

881. If the column be marching in retreat, and the colonel shall wish to march it in advance, he will command:

1. *To march in advance.* 2. *Battalion right about.* 3. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

882. At the second command, the file closers of the second and third divisions will place themselves before the rear rank of their respective divisions; at the third, the column will face by the front rank.

To reduce the square.

883. The colonel, wishing to break the square, will command:

1. *Reduce square.* 2. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

884. This movement will be executed in the manner indicated, No. 863 and following; but the file-closers of the fourth front will place themselves behind the rear rank the moment it faces about; the field and staff, the color-bearer and buglers, will, at the same time, return to their places in column.

To form square from line of battle.

888. To ploy the battalion into column upon one of the flank divisions, the colonel will command:

1. *To form square.* 2. *Column at half distance by division.* 3. *On the first* (or *fourth*) *division.* 4. *Battalion, right* (or *left*)—FACE. 5. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

889. This movement will be executed according to the priciples prescribed.

890. If the battalion be marching in line of battle, and the colonel shall wish to form square, in a direction perpendicular to the line of battle, he will command:

1. *To form square.* 2. *On the first* (or *fourth*) *division, form column.* 3. *Battalion, by the right* (or *left*) *flank.* 4. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

892. To ploy the battalion into double column, the colonel will command:

1. *To form square.* 2. *Double column at half distance.* 3. *Battalion, inwards*—FACE. 4. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH),

894. The battalion being in march, to ploy it into double column to form square, the colonel will command:

1. *To form square.* 2. *Form double column.* 3. *Battalion, by the right and left flanks.* 4. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

895. The chief of the leading division will halt his division at the command *march.*

Squares in four ranks.

910. If the square formed in two ranks, according to the preceding rules, should not be deemed sufficiently strong, the colonel may cause the square to be formed in four ranks.

911. The battalion being in column by company at full distance, right in front, and at a halt, when the colonel shall wish to form square in four ranks, he will first cause divisions to be formed, which being executed, he will command:

1. *To form square in four ranks.* 2. *To half distance, close column.* 3. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

912. At the first command, the chief of the first division will caution the right company to face to the left, and the left company to face to the right. The chiefs of the other divisions will caution their divisions to move forward.

913. At the command *march*, the right company of the first division will form into four ranks on its left file, and the left company into four ranks on its right file. The formation ended, the chief of this division will align it by the left.

914. The other divisions will move forward and double their files marching; the right company of each division will double on its left file, and the left company on its right file. The formation completed, each chief of division will command, *Guide left.* Each chief will halt his division when it shall have the distance of a company front in four ranks from the preceding one, counting from its rear rank, and will align his division by the left. At the instant the fourth division is halted, the file-closers will move rapidly before its front rank.

915. The colonel will form square, re-form column, and reduce square in four ranks, by the same commands and means as prescribed for a battalion in two ranks.

916. If the square formed in four ranks be reduced and at a halt, and the colonel shall wish to form the battalion into two ranks, he will command:

1. *In two ranks undouble files.* 2. *Battalion, outwards*—FACE. 3. MARCH.

917. At the first command, the captains will step before the centres of their respective companies, and those on the right will caution them to face to the right, and those on the left to face to the left.

918. At the second command, the battalion will face to the right and left.

919. At the command *march*, each company will undouble its files and re-form into two ranks as indicated in the school of the company. Each captain will halt his company and face it to the front. The formation completed, each chief of division will align his division by the left.

920. If the column be in march, with divisions formed in four ranks, and the colonel shall wish to reform them into two ranks, he will command:

1. *Guide centre.* 2. *In two ranks, undouble files.* 3. MARCH.

921. The captain, placed in the centre of each division, will continue to march straight to the front, as will also the left file of the right company, and the right file of the left company. Each company will then be re-formed into two ranks, as prescribed in the school of the company.

922. The battalion being formed into two ranks, the colonel will command, *Guide left* (or *right*).

923. To form square in four ranks on one of the flank divisions, the colonel will command:

1. *To form square, in four ranks.* 2. *Column at half distance, by division.* 3. *On the first* (or *fourth*) *division.* 4. *Battalion, right* (or *left*)—FACE. 5. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

924. At the second command, each chief of division will place himself before the centre of his division, and caution it to face to the right.

925. At the fourth command, the right guide of the first division will remain faced to the front, the battalion will face to the right.

926. At the command *march*, the first file of four men of the first division will face to the front, remaining doubled. All the other files of four men will step off together, and each in succession will close up to its proper distance on the file preceding it, and face to the front, remaining doubled. When the last file shall have closed, the chief of division will command, *Left*—DRESS.

927. The other divisions will ploy into column in the same manner as with a battalion in two ranks, observing what follows: the chiefs of divisions, instead of allowing their divisions to file past them on entering the column, will continue to lead them, and as each division shall arrive on a line with the right guide of the first division, its chief will halt the right guide, who will immediately face to the front; the first file of four men will also halt at the same time and face to the front, remaining doubled. The second file will close on the first, and when closed, halt, and face to the front, remaining doubled. All the other files will execute successively what has just been prescribed for the second. When the last file shall have closed, the chief of division will command, *Left*—DRESS.

931. If the colonel should wish to form a perpendicular square in four ranks, by double column, he will command:

1. *To form square, in four ranks.* 2. *Double column, at half distance.* 3. *Battalion inwards*—FACE. 4. MARCH (or *douule quick*—MARCH).

932. At the second command, the captains of companies will place themselves before the centres of their respective companies, and caution those on the right to face to the left, and those on the left to face to the right. The captain of the fifth company will caution his covering sergeant to stand fast.

933. At the third command, the battalion will face to the left and right; at the command *march*, the left file of the fourth, and the right file of the fifth company, will face to the front, remaining doubled. The fourth company will close successively by file of fours on the left file, and the fifth company, in like manner, on the right file; the files will face to the front, remaining doubled. The formation completed, the chief of division will command: *Right dress.* The junior captain will place himself in the interval between the two companies.

934. The other companies will close as prescribed for the double column in two ranks, observing what follows: each captain will halt the leading guide of his company the moment the head of his company arrives on a line with the centre of the column. In the right companies, the left guide will step into the line of file closers, and the left file of four men will face immediately to the front, remaining doubled, and by the side of the right guide of the left company. The companies will each form into four ranks, as prescribed, No. 926, the right companies on the left file, and the left companies on the right file. The formation completed, the junior captain will place himself

between the two companies, and the senior will command: *Right—dress.*

Column against cavalry.

965. When a column closed in mass has to form square, it will begin by taking company distance; but if so suddenly threatened by cavalry as not to allow time for this disposition, it will be formed in the following manner:

966. The colonel will command:

1. *Column against cavalry.* 2. MARCH.

967. At the first command, the chief of the leading division will caution it to stand fast and pass behind the rear rank; in the interior divisions each captain will promptly designate the number of files necessary to close the interval between his company and the one in front of it. The captains of the divisions next to the one in rear, in addition to closing the interval in front, will also close up the interval which separates this division from the last; the chief of the fourth division will caution it to face about, and its file closers will pass briskly before the front rank.

968. At the command *march*, the guides of each division will place themselves rapidly in the line of file closers. The first division will stand fast, the fourth will face about, the outer file of each of these divisions will then face outwards; in the other divisions the files designated for closing the intervals will form to the right and left into line, but in the division next to the rearmost one, the first files that come into line will close to the right or left until they join the rear division. The files of each company which remain in column will close on their outer files, formed into line, in order to create a vacant space in the middle of the column.

969. If the column be in march, the *column against cavalry* will be formed by the same commands and means. At the command *march*, the first and fourth divisions will halt and the latter division will face about; the interior divisions will conform to what has been prescribed above.

970. The battalion being no longer threatened by cavalry, the colonel will command:

1. *Form column.* 2. March.

971. At the command *march*, the files in column will close to the left and right to make room for those in line who will retake their places in column by stepping backwards, except those closing the interval between the two rear divisions, who will take their places in column by a flank movement. The fourth division will face about, the guides will resume their places.

972. If the colonel should be so pressed as not to have time to order bayonets to be fixed, the men will fix them, without command or signal, at the cautionary command, *column against cavalry.*

973. As this manœuvre is often used in war, and with decided advantage, the colonel will frequently cause it to be executed in order to render it familiar.

Article Fifteenth.

The rally.

974. The battalion being in line of battle, the colonel will sometimes cause the disperse to be sounded, at which signal, the battalion will break and disperse.

975. When the colonel shall wish to rally the battalion, he will cause *to the color* to be sounded, and at the same time place two markers and the color-bearer in the direction he may wish to give the battalion.

976. Each captain will rally his company about six paces in rear of the place it is to occupy in line of battle.

977. The colonel will cause the color-company to be promptly established against the markers, and each company by the command of its captain will be aligned on the color-company according to the principles heretofore prescribed.

978. When the colonel shall wish to rally the battalion in column, he will cause *the assembly* to be sounded, and place two markers before the position to be occupied by the first company; the captain of this company will rally his company in rear of the two markers, and each of the other captains will rally his company at platoon distance, behind the one which should precede it in the order in column.

END OF SCHOOL OF THE BATTALION.

INSTRUCTION FOR SKIRMISHERS.

General principles and division of the instruction.

1. The movements of skirmishers should be subjected to such rules as will give to the commander the means of moving them in any direction with the greatest promptitude.

2. It is not expected that these movements should be executed with the same precision as in closed ranks, nor is it desirable, as such exactness would materially interfere with their prompt execution.

3. When skirmishers are thrown out to clear the way for, and to protect the advance of, the main corps, their movements should be so regulated by this corps, as to keep it constantly covered.

4. Every body of skirmishers should have a reserve, the strength and composition of which will vary according to circumstances.

5. If the body thrown out be within sustaining distance of the main corps, a very small reserve will be sufficient for each company, whose duty it shall be to fill vacant places, furnish the line with cartridges, relieve the fatigued, and serve as a rallying point for the skirmishers.

6. If the main corps be at a considerable distance, besides the company reserves, another reserve will be required, composed of entire companies, which will be employed to sustain and reinforce such parts of the line as may be warmly attacked; this reserve should strong enough to relieve at least half the companies deployed as skirmishers.

7. The reserves should be placed behind the centre

of the line of skirmishers, the company reserves at one hundred and fifty, and the principal reserve at four hundred paces. This rule, however, is not invariable. The reserves, while holding themselves within sustaining distance of the line, should be, as much as possible, in a position to afford each other mutual protection, and must carefully profit by any accidents of the ground to conceal themselves from the view of the enemy, and to shelter themselves from his fire.

8. The movements of skirmishers will be executed in quick, or double quick time. The run will be resorted to only in cases of urgent necessity.

9. Skirmishers will be permitted to carry their pieces in the manner most convenient to them.

10. The movements will be habitually indicated by the sounds of the bugle.

11. The officers, and, if necessary, the non-commissioned officers, will repeat, and cause the commands to be executed, as soon as they are given; but to avoid mistakes, when the signals are employed, they will wait until the last bugle note is sounded before commencing the movement.

12. When skirmishers are ordered to move rapidly, the officers and non-commissioned officers will see that the men economise their strength, keep cool and profit by all the advantages which the ground may offer for cover. It is only by this continual watchfulness on the part of all grades, that a line of skirmishers can attain success.

13. This instruction will be divided into five articles.

14. In the first four articles, it is supposed that the movements are executed by a company deployed as skirmishers, on a front equal to that of the battalion in order of battle. In the fifth article, it is supposed that each company of the battalion, being deployed as skirmishers, occupies a front of one hundred paces. From these two examples, rules may be deduced for all cases, whatever may be the numerical strength of

the skirmishers, and the extent of ground they ought to occupy.

Article First.

Deployments.

15. A company may be deployed as skirmishers in two ways: forward, and by the flank.

16. The deployment forward will be adopted when the company is behind the line on which it is to be established as skirmishers: it will be deployed by the flank, when it finds itself already on that line.

17. Whenever a company is to be deployed as skirmishers, it will be divided into two platoons, and each platoon will be subdivided into two sections; the comrades in battle, forming groups of four men, will be careful to know and to sustain each other. The captain will assure himself that the files in the centre of each platoon and section are designated.

18. A company may be deployed as skirmishers on its right, left, or centre file, or on any other named file whatsoever. In this manner, skirmishers may be thrown forward with the greatest possible rapidity on any ground they may be required to occupy.

19. A chain of skirmishers ought generally to preserve their alignment, but no advantages which the ground may present should be sacrificed to attain this regularity.

20. The interval between skirmishers depends on the extent of ground to be covered; but in general, it is not proper that groups of four men should be removed more than forty paces from each other. The habitual distance between men of the same group in open grounds will be five paces; in no case will they lose sight of each other.

21. The front to be occupied to cover a battalion comprehends its front and the half of each interval

which separates it from the battalion on its right and left. If a line, whose wings are not supported, should be covered by skirmishers, it will be necessary either to protect the flanks with skirmishers, or to extend them in front of the line so far beyond the wings as effectually to oppose any attempt which might be made by the enemy's skirmishers to disturb the flanks.

To deploy forward.

22. A company being at a halt or in march, when the captain shall wish to deploy it forward on the left file of the first platoon, holding the second platoon in reserve, he will command :

1. *First platoon—as skirmishers.*
2. *On the left file—take intervals.*
3. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

23. At the first command, the second and third lieutenants will place themselves rapidly two paces behind the centres of the right and left sections of the first platoon ; the fifth sergeant will move one pace in front of the centre of the first platoon, and will place himself between the two sections in the front rank as soon as the movement begins; the fourth sergeant will place himself on the the left of the front rank of the same platoon, as soon as he can pass. The captain will indicate to this sergeant the point on which he wishes him to direct his march. The first lieutenant, placing himself before the centre of the second platoon, will command :

Second platoon backward—MARCH.

24. At this command, the second platoon will step three paces to the rear, so as to unmask the flank of the first platoon. It will then be halted by its chief, and the second sergeant will place himself on the left,

and the third sergeant on the right flank of this platoon.

25. At the command *march*, the left group of four men, conducted by the fourth sergeant, will direct itself on the point indicated; all the other groups of fours throwing forward briskly the left shoulder, will move diagonally to the front in double quick time, so as to gain to the right the space of twenty paces, which shall be the distance between each group and that immediately on its left. When the second group from the left shall arrive on a line with, and twenty paces from the first, it will march straight to the front, conforming to the gait and direction of the first, keeping constantly on the same alignment and at twenty paces from it. The third group, and all the others, conform to what has just been prescribed for the second; they will arrive successively on the line. The right guide will arrive with the last group.

26. The left guide having reached the point where the left of the line should rest, the captain will command the skirmishers to halt; the men composing each group of fours will then immediately deploy at five paces from each other, and to the right and left of the front rank man of the even file in each group, the rear rank men placing themselves on the left of their file leaders. If any groups be not in line at the command *halt*, they will move up rapidly, conforming to what has just been prescribed.

27. If, during the deployment, the line should be fired upon by the enemy, the captain may cause the groups of fours to deploy, as they gain their proper distances.

28. The line being formed, the non-commissioned officers on the right, left and centre of the platoon will place themselves ten paces in rear of the line, and opposite the positions they respectively occupied. The chiefs of sections will promptly rectify any irregularities, and then place themselves twenty-five or thirty

paces in rear of the centre of their sections, each having with him four men taken from the reserve, and also a bugler, who will repeat, if necessary, the signals sounded by the captain.

29. Skirmishers should be particularly instructed to take advantage of any cover which the ground may offer, and should lie flat on the ground whenever such a movement is necessary to protect them from the fire of the enemy. Regularity in the alignment should yield to this important advantage.

30. When the movement begins, the first lieutenant will face the second platoon *about*, and march it promptly, and by the shortest line, to about one hundred and fifty paces in rear of the centre of the line. He will hold it always at this distance, unless ordered to the contrary.

31. The reserve will conform itself to all the movements of the line. *This rule is general.*

32. Light troops will carry their bayonets habitually in the scabbard, and this rule applies equally to the skirmishers and the reserve; whenever bayonets are required to be fixed, a particular signal will be given. The captain will give a general superintendence to the whole deployment, and then promptly place himself about eighty paces in rear of the centre of the line. He will have with him a bugler and four men taken from the reserve.

33. The deployment may be made on the right or the centre of the platoon, by the same commands, substituting the indication *right* or *centre* for that of *left* file.

34. The deployment on the right or the centre will be made according to the principles prescribed above; in this latter case, the centre of the platoon will be marked by the right group of fours in the second section; the fifth sergeant will place himself on the right of this group, and serve as the guide of the platoon during the deployment.

35. In whatever manner the deployment be made, on the right, left, or centre, the men in each group of fours will always deploy at five paces from each other, and upon the front rank man of the even numbered file. The deployments will habitually be made at twenty paces interval; but if a greater interval be required, it will be indicated in the command.

36. If a company be thrown out as skirmishers, so near the main body as to render a reserve unnecessary, the entire company will be extended in the same manner, and according to the same principles, as for the deployment of a platoon. In this case, the third lieutenant will command the fourth section, and a non-commissioned officer designated for that purpose, the second section; the fifth sergeant will act as centre guide; the file closers will place themselves ten paces in rear of the line, and opposite their places in line of battle. The first and second lieutenant will each have a bugler near him.

To deploy by the flank.

37. The company being at a halt, when the captain shall wish to deploy it by the flank, holding the first platoon in reserve, he will command:

1. *Second platoon—as skirmishers.* 2. *By the right flank—take intervals.* 3. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

38. At the first command, the first and third lieutenants will place themselves, respectively, two paces behind the centres of the first and second sections of the second platoon; the fifth sergeant will place himself one pace in front of the centre of the second platoon; the third sergeant, as soon as he can pass, will place himself on the right of the front rank of the same platoon. The captain will indicate to him the point on which he wishes him to direct his march. The chief of the first platoon will execute what has

been prescribed for the chief of the second platoon, Nos. 23 and 24. The fourth sergeant will place himself on the left flank of the reserve, the first sergeant will remain on the right flank.

39. At the second command, the first and third lieutenants will place themselves two paces behind the left group of their respective sections.

40. At the command *march*, the second platoon will face to the right, and commence the movement; the left group of fours will stand fast, but will deploy as soon as there is room on its right, conforming to what has been prescribed, No. 26; the third sergeant will place himself on the left of the right group, to conduct it; the second group will halt at twenty paces from the one on its left, the third group at twenty paces from the second, and so on to the right. As the groups halt, they will face to the enemy, and deploy as has been explained for the left group.

41. The chiefs of sections will pay particular attention to the successive deployments of the groups, keeping near the group about to halt, so as to rectify any errors which may be committed. When the deployment is completed, they will place themselves thirty paces in rear of the centre of their sections, as has been heretofore prescribed. The non-commissioned officers will also place themselves as previously indicated.

42. As soon as the movement commences, the chief of the first platoon, causing it to face about, will move it as indicated No. 30.

43. The deployment may be made by the left flank according to the same principles, substituting *left flank* for *right flank*.

44. If the captain should wish to deploy the company upon the centre of one of the platoons, he will command:

1. *Second platoon—as skirmishers.* 2. *By the right and left flanks—take intervals.* 3. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

45. At the first command, the officers and non-commissioned officers will conform to what has been prescribed, No. 38.

46. At the second command, the first lieutenant will place himself behind the left group of the right section of the second platoon, the third lieutenant behind the right group of the left section of the same platoon.

47. At the command *march*, the right section will face to the right, the left section will face to the left, the group on the right of this latter section will stand fast. The two sections will move off in opposite directions: the third sergeant will place himself on the left of the right file to conduct it, the second sergeant on the right of the left file. The two groups nearest that which stands fast, will each halt at twenty paces from this group, and each of the other groups will halt at twenty paces from the group which is in rear of it. Each group will deploy as heretofore prescribed, No. 40.

48. The first and third lieutenants will direct the movement, holding themselves always abreast of the group which is about to halt.

49. The captain can cause the deployment to be made on any named group whatsoever; in this case, the fifth sergeant will place himself before the group indicated, and the deployment will be made according to the principles heretofore prescribed.

50. The entire company may be also deployed, according to the same principles.

To extend intervals.

51. This movement, which is employed to extend a line of skirmishers, will be executed according to the principles prescribed for deployments.

52. If it be supposed that the line of skirmishers is at a halt, and that the captain wishes to extend it to the left, he will command:

1. *By the left flank* (*so many paces*) *extend intervals.* 2. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

53. At the command *march*, the group on the right will stand fast, all the other groups will face to the left, and each group will extend its interval to the prescribed distance by the means indicated No. 40.

54. The men of the same group will continue to preserve between each other the distance of five paces, unless the nature of the ground should render it necessary that they should close nearer, in order to keep in sight of each other. The intervals refer to the spaces between the groups, and not to the distances between the men in each group. The intervals will be taken from the right or left man of the neighboring group.

55. If the line of skirmishers be marching to the front, and the captain should wish to extend it to the right, he will command:

1. *On the left group* (*so many paces*) *extend intervals.* 2. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

56. The left group, conducted by the guide, will continue to march on the point of direction; the other groups throwing forward the left shoulder, and taking the double quick step, will open their intervals to the prescribed distance, by the means indicated No. 25, conforming also to what is prescribed No. 54.

57. Intervals may be extended on the centre of the line, according to the same principles.

58. If in extending intervals, it be intended that one company or platoon should occupy a line which had been previously occupied by two, the men of the company or platoon which is to retire, will fall successively to the rear as they are relieved by the extension of the intervals.

To close intervals.

59. This movement, like that of opening intervals, will be executed according to the principles prescribed for the deployments.

60. If the line of skirmishers be halted, and the captain should wish to close intervals to the left, he will command:

1. *By the left flank (so many paces) close intervals.* 2. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

61. At the command *march*, the left group will stand fast, the other groups will face to the left and close to the prescribed distance, each group facing to the enemy as it attains its proper distance.

62. If the line be marching to the front, the captain will command:

1. *On the left group (so many paces) close intervals.* 2. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

63. The left group, conducted by the guide, will continue to move on in the direction previously indicated; the other groups, advancing the right shoulder, will close to the left, until the intervals are reduced to the prescribed distance.

64. Intervals may be closed on the right, or on the centre, according to the same principles.

65. When intervals are to be closed up, in order to reinforce a line of skirmishers, so as to cause two companies to cover the ground which had been previously occupied by one, the new company will deploy so as to finish its movement at twenty paces in rear of the line it is to occupy, and the men will successively move upon that line, as they shall be unmasked by the men of the old company. The reserves of the two companies will unite behind the centre of the line.

To relieve a company deployed as skirmishers.

66. When a company of skirmishers is to be relieved, the captain will be advised of the intention,

which he will immediately communicate to his first and second lieutenants.

67. The new company will execute its deployment forward, so as to finish the movement at about twenty paces in rear of the line.

68. Arrived at this distance, the men of the new company, by command of their captain, will advance rapidly a few paces beyond the old line and halt; the new line being established, the old company will assemble on its reserve, taking care not to get into groups of fours until they are beyond the fire of the enemy.

69. If the skirmishers to be relieved are marching in retreat, the company thrown out to relieve them will deploy by the flank, as prescribed No. 38 and following. The old skirmishers will continue to retire with order, and having passed the new line, they will form upon the reserve.

Article Second.

To advance.

To advance in line, and to retreat in line.

70. When a platoon or a company deployed as skirmishers is marching by the front, the guide will be habitually in the centre. No particular indication to this effect need be given in the commands, but if on the contrary it be intended that the directing guide should be on the right or left, the command *guide right*, or *guide left*, will be given immediately after that of forward.

71. The captain, wishing the line of skirmishers to advance, will command:

1. *Forward.* 2. March (or *double quick*—March.)

72. This command will be repeated with the great-

est rapidity by the chiefs of sections, and in case of need, by the sergeants. This rule is general, whether the skirmishers march by the front or by the flank.

73. At the first command, three sergeants will move briskly on the line, the first on the right, the second on the left, and the third in the centre.

74. At the command *march*, the line will move to the front, the guide charged with the direction will move on the point indicated to him, the skirmishers will hold themselves aligned on this guide, and preserve their intervals towards him.

75. The chiefs of sections will march immediately behind their sections, so as to direct their movements.

76. The captain will give a general superintendence to the movement.

77. When he shall wish to halt the skirmishers, he will command:

HALT.

78. At this command, briskly repeated, the line will halt. The chiefs of sections will promptly rectify any irregularity in the alignment and intervals, and after taking every possible advantage which the ground may offer for protecting the men, they, with the three sergeants in the line, will retire to their proper places in rear.

79. The captain, wishing to march the skirmishers in retreat, will command:

1. *In retreat.* 2. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

80. At the first command, the three sergeants will move on the line as prescribed No. 73.

81. At the command *march*, the skirmishers will face about individually, and march to the rear, conforming to the principles prescribed No. 74.

82. The officers and sergeants will use every exertion to preserve order.

83. To halt the skirmishers, marching in retreat, the captain will command:

HALT.

84. At this command the skirmishers will halt, and immediately face to the front.

85. The chiefs of sections and the three guides will each conform himself to what is prescribed No. 78.

To change direction.

86. If the commander of a line of skirmishers shall wish to cause it to change direction to the right, he will command:

1. *Right wheel.* 2. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

87. At the command *march*, the right guide will mark time in his place; the left guide will move in a circle to the right, and that he may properly regulate his movements, will occasionally cast his eyes to the right, so as to observe the direction of the line, and the nature of the ground to be passed over. The centre guide will also march in a circle to the right, and in order to conform his movements to the general direction, will take care that his steps are only half the length of the steps of the guide on the left.

88. The skirmishers will regulate the length of their steps by their distance from the marching flank, being less as they approach the pivot, and greater as they are removed from it; they will often look to the marching flank, so as to preserve the direction and their intervals.

89. When the commander of the line shall wish to resume the direct march, he will command:

1. *Forward.* 2. MARCH.

90. At the command *march*, the line will cease to

wheel, and the skirmishers will move direct to the front; the centre guide will march on the point which will be indicated to him.

91. If the captain should wish to halt the line, in place of moving it to the front, he will command:

HALT.

92. At this command, the line will halt.

93. A change of direction to the left will be made according to the same principles, and by inverse means.

94. A line of skirmishers marching in retreat, will change direction by the same means, and by the same commands, as a line marching in advance; for example, if the captain should wish to refuse his left, now become the right, he will command: 1. *Left wheel.* 2. MARCH. At the command *halt*, the skirmishers will face to the enemy.

95. But if, instead of halting the line, the captain should wish to continue to march it in retreat, he will, when he judges the line has wheeled sufficiently, command:

1. *In retreat.* 2. MARCH.

To march by the flank.

96. The captain, wishing the skirmishers to march by the right flank, will command:

1. *By the right flank.*
2. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

97. At the first command, the three sergeants will place themslves on the line.

98. At the command *march*, the skirmishers will face to the right and move off; the right guide will place himself by the side of the leading man on the

right to conduct him, and will march on the point indicated; each skirmisher will take care to follow exactly in the direction of the one immediately preceding him, and to preserve his distance.

99. The skirmishers may be marched by the left flank, according to the same principles, and by the same commands, substituting *left* for *right;* the left guide will place himself by the side of the leading man to conduct him.

100. If the skirmishers be marching by the flank, and the captain should wish to halt them, he will command:

HALT.

101. At this command, the skirmishers will halt and face to the enemy. The officers and sergeants will conform to what has been prescribed, No. 78.

102. The reserve should execute all the movements of the line, and be held always about one hundred and fifty paces from it, so as to be in the position to second its operations.

103. When the chief of the reserve shall wish to march it in advance, he will command: 1. *Platoon forward;* 2. *Guide left;* 3. MARCH. If he should wish to march it in retreat, he will command: 1. *In retreat;* 2. MARCH; 3. *Guide right.* At the command *halt*, it will re-face to the enemy.

104. The men should be made to understand that the signals or commands, such as *forward*, mean that the skirmishers shall march on the enemy; *in retreat*, that they shall retire, and to *the right or left flank*, that the men must face to the right or left, whatever may be their position.

105. If the skirmishers be marching by the flank, and the captain should wish to change direction to the right (or left), he will command: 1. *By file right* (or *left*); 2. MARCH. These movements will also be executed by the signals, Nos. 14 and 15.

Article Third.

The firings.

106. Skirmishers will fire either at a halt or marching.

To fire at a halt.

107. To cause this fire to be executed, the captain will command:

Commence—Firing.

108. At this command, briskly repeated, the men of the front rank will commence firing; they will reload rapidly and hold themselves in readiness to fire again. During this time the men of the rear rank will come to a ready, and as soon as their respective file-leaders have loaded, they will also fire and reload. The men of each file will thus continue the firing, conforming to this principle, that the one or the other shall always have his piece loaded.

109. Light troops should be always calm, so as to aim with accuracy; they should, moreover, endeavor to estimate correctly the distances between themselves and the enemy to be hit, and thus be enabled to deliver their fire with the greater certainty of success.

110. Skirmishers will not remain in the same place whilst reloading, unless protected by accidents in the ground.

To fire marching.

111. This fire will be executed by the same commands as the fire at a halt.

112. At the command *commence firing*, if the line be advancing, the front rank man of every file will halt, fire, and reload before throwing himself forward.

The rear rank man of the same file will continue to march, and after passing ten or twelve paces beyond his front rank man, will halt, come to a ready, select his object, and fire when his front rank man has loaded; the fire will thus continue to be executed by each file; the skirmishers will keep united, and endeavor, as much as possible, to preserve the general direction of the alignment.

113. If the line be marching in retreat, at the command *commence firing*, the front rank man of every file will halt, face to the enemy, fire, and then re-load whilst moving to the rear; the rear rank man of the same file will continue to march, and halt ten or twelve paces beyond his front rank man, face about, come to a ready, and fire, when his front rank man has passed him in retreat and loaded; after which, he will move to the rear and reload; the front rank man in his turn, after marching briskly to the rear, will halt at ten or twelve paces from the rear rank, face to the enemy, load his piece and fire, conforming to what has just been prescribed; the firing will thus be continued.

114. If the company be marching by the right flank, at the command, *commence firing*, the front rank man of every file will face to the enemy, step one pace forward, halt, and fire; the rear rank man will continue to move forward. As soon as the front rank man has fired, he will place himself briskly behind his rear rank man and reload whilst marching. When he has loaded, the rear rank man will, in his turn, step one pace forward, halt, and fire, and returning to the ranks, will place himself behind his front rank man; the latter, in his turn, will act in the same manner, observing the same principles. At the command, *cease firing*, the men of the rear rank will retake their original positions, if not already there.

115. If the company be marching by the left flank, the fire will be executed according to the same princi-

ples, but in this case, it will be the rear rank men who will fire first.

116. The following rules will be observed in the cases to which they apply.

117. If the line be firing at a halt, or whilst marching by the flank, at the command, *Forward*—MARCH, it will be the men whose pieces are loaded, without regard to the particular rank to which they belong, who will move to the front. Those men whose pieces have been discharged, will remain in their places to load them before moving forward, and the firing will be continued agreeably to the principles prescribed, No. 112.

118. If the line be firing either at a halt, advancing, or whilst marching by the flank, at the command, *In retreat*—MARCH, the men whose pieces are loaded will remain faced to the enemy, and will fire in this position; the men whose pieces are discharged will retreat loading them, and the fire will be continued agreeably to the principles prescribed No. 113.

119. If the line of skirmishers be firing either at a halt, advancing, or in retreat, at the command, *By the right* (or *left*) *flank*—MARCH, the men whose pieces are loaded will step one pace out of the general alignment, face to the enemy, and fire in this position; the men whose pieces are unloaded will face to the right (or left) and march in the direction indicated. The men who stepped out of the ranks will place themselves, immediately after firing, upon the general direction, and in rear of their front or rear rank men, as the case may be. The fire will be continued according to the principles prescribed No. 114.

120. Skirmishers will be habituated to load their pieces whilst marching; but they will be enjoined to halt always an instant, when in the act of charging cartridge, and priming.

121. They should be practised to fire and load kneeling, lying down, and sitting, and much liberty should

be allowed in these exercises, in order that they may be executed in the manner found to be most convenient. Skirmishers should be cautioned not to forget that, in whatever position they may load, it is important that the piece should be placed upright before ramming, in order that the entire charge of powder may reach the bottom of the bore.

122. In commencing the fire, the men of the same rank should not all fire at once, and the men of the same file should be particular that one or the other of them be always loaded.

123. In retreating, the officer commanding the skirmishers should seize on every advantage which the ground may present, for arresting the enemy as long as possible.

124. At the signal to *cease firing*, the captain will see that the order is promptly obeyed; but the men who may not be loaded, will load. If the line be marching, it will continue the movement; but the man of each file who happens to be in front, will wait until the man in rear shall be abreast with him.

125. If a line of skirmishers be firing advancing, at the command *halt*, the line will re-form upon the skirmishers who are in front; when the line is retreating, upon the skirmishers who are in rear.

126. Officers should watch with the greatest possible vigilance over a line of skirmishers; in battle, they should neither carry a rifle or fowling piece. In all the firings, they, as well as the sergeants, should see that order and silence are preserved, and that the skirmishers do not wander imprudently; they should especially caution them to be calm and collected; not to fire until they distinctly perceive the objects at which they aim, and are sure that those objects are within proper range. Skirmishers should take advantage promptly, and with intelligence, of all shelter, and of all accidents of the ground, to conceal themselves from the view of the enemy, and to protect themselves

from his fire. It may often happen, that intervals are momentarily lost when several men near each other find a common shelter; but when they quit this position, they should immediately resume their intervals and their places in line, so that they may not, by crowding, needlessly expose themselves to the fire of the enemy.

Article Fourth.

the rally.

To form column.

127. A company deployed as skirmishers, is rallied in order to oppose the enemy with better success; the rallies are made at a run, and with bayonets fixed; when ordered to rally, the skirmishers fix bayonets without command.

128. There are several ways of rallying, which the chief of the line will adopt according to circumstances.

129. If the line, marching or at a halt, be merely disturbed by scattered horsemen, it will not be necessary to fall back on the reserve, but the captain will cause bayonets to be fixed. If the horsemen should, however, advance to charge the skirmishers, the captain will command, *rally by fours.* The line will halt if marching, and the four men of each group will execute this rally in the following manner: the front rank man of the even numbered file will take the position of *guard against cavalry;* the rear rank man of the odd numbered file will also take the position of *guard against cavalry,* turning his back to him, his right foot thirteen inches from the right foot of the former, and parallel to it; the front rank man of the odd file, and the rear rank man of the even file, will also place themselves back to back, taking a like posi-

tion, and between the two men already established, facing to the right and left; the right feet of the four men will be brought together, forming a square, and serving for mutual support. The four men in each group will come to a ready, fire as occasion may offer, and load without moving their feet.

130. The captain and chiefs of sections will each cause the four men who constitute his guard to form square, the men separating so as to enable him and the bugler to place themselves in the centre. The three sergeants will each promptly place himself in the group nearest him in the line of skirmishers.

131. Whenever the captain shall judge these squares too weak, but should wish to hold his position by strengthening his line, he will command:

Rally by sections.

132. At this command, the chiefs of sections will move rapidly on the centre group of their respective sections, or on any other interior group whose position might offer a shelter, or other particular advantage; the skirmishers will collect rapidly at a run on this group, and without distinction of numbers. The men composing the group on which the formation is made, will immediately form square, as heretofore explained, and elevate their pieces, the bayonets uppermost, in order to indicate the point on which the rally is to be made. The other skirmishers, as they arrive, will occupy and fill the open angular spaces between these four men, and successively rally around this first nucleus, and in such manner as to form rapidly a compact circle. The skirmishers will take as they arrive, the position of charge bayonet, the point of the bayonet more elevated, and will cock their pieces in this position. The movement concluded, the two exterior ranks will fire as occasion may offer, and load without moving their feet.

133. The captain will move rapidly with his guard wherever he may judge his presence most necessary.

134. The officers and sergeants will be particular to observe that the rally is made in silence, and with promptitude and order; that some pieces in each of their subdivisions be at all times loaded, and that the fire is directed on those points only where it will be most effective.

135. If the reserve should be threatened, it will form into a circle around its chief.

136. If the captain, or commander of a line of skirmishers formed of many platoons should judge that the rally by sections does not offer sufficient resistance, he will cause the rally by platoons to be executed, and for this purpose, will command:

Rally by platoons.

137. This movement will be executed according to the same principles, and by the same means as the rally by sections. The chiefs of platoon will conform to what has been prescribed for the chiefs of section.

138. The captain wishing to rally the skirmishers on the reserve, will command:

Rally on the reserve.

139. At this command, the captain will move briskly on the reserve; the officer who commands it will take immediate steps to form square; for this purpose, he will cause the half sections on the flanks to be thrown perpendicularly to the rear; he will order the men to come to a ready.

140. The skirmishers of each section, taking the run, will form rapidly into groups, and upon that man of each group who is nearest the centre of the section. These groups will direct themselves diagonally towards each other, and in such manner as to

form into sections with the greatest possible rapidity while moving to the rear; the officers and sergeants will see that this formation is made in proper order, and the chiefs will direct their sections upon the reserve, taking care to unmask it to the right and left. As the skirmishers arrive, they will continue and complete the formation of the square begun by the reserve, closing in rapidly upon the latter, without regard to their places in line; they will come to a ready without command, and fire upon the enemy; which will also be done by the reserve as soon as it is unmasked by the skirmishers.

141. If a section should be closely pressed by cavalry while retreating, its chief will command *halt;* at this command, the men will form rapidly into a compact circle around the officer, who will re-form his section and resume the march, the moment he can do so with safety.

142. The formation of the square in a prompt and efficient manner requires coolness and activity on the part of both officers and sergeants.

143. The captain will also profit by every moment of respite which the enemy's cavalry may leave him; as soon as he can, he will endeavor to place himself beyond the reach of their charges, either by gaining a position where he may defend himself with advantage, or by returning to the corps to which he belongs. For this purpose, being in square, he will cause the company to break into column by platoons at half distance; to this effect, he will command:

1. *Form column.* 2. MARCH.

144. At the command *march*, each platoon will dress on its centre, and the platoon which was facing to the rear will face about without command. The guides will place themselves on the right and left of their respective platoons; those of the second platoon

will place themselves at half distance from those of the first, counting from the rear rank. These dispositions being made, the captain can move the column in whatever direction he may judge proper.

145. If he wishes to march it in retreat, he will command:

1. *In retreat.* 2. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH.)

146. At the command *march*, the column will immediately face by the rear rank, and move off in the opposite direction. As soon as the column is in motion, the captain will command:

3. *Guide right* (or *left.*)

147. He will indicate the direction to the leading guide; the guides will march at their proper distances, and the men will keep aligned.

148. If again threatened by cavalry, the captain will command:

1. *Form square.* 2. MARCH.

149. At the command *march*, the column will halt; the first platoon will face about briskly, and the outer half sections of each platoon will be thrown perpendicularly to the rear, so as to form the second and third fronts of the square. The officers and sergeants will promptly rectify any irregularties which may be committed.

150. If he should wish to march the column in advance, the captain will command:

1. *Form column.* 2. MARCH.

151. Which will be executed as prescribed, No. 144.

152. The column being formed, the captain will command:

1. *Forward.* 2. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH). 3. *Guide left* (or *right*).

153. At the second command, the column will move forward, and at the third command, the men will take the touch of elbows to the side of the guide.

154. If the captain should wish the column to gain ground to the right or left, he will do so by rapid wheels to the side opposite the guide, and for this purpose, will change the guide whenever it may be necessary.

155. If a company be in column by platoon, at half distance, right in front, the captain can deploy the first platoon as skirmishers by the means already explained; but if it should be his wish to deploy the second platoon forward on the centre file, leaving the first platoon in reserve, he will command:

1. *Second platoon—as skirmishers.* 2. *On the centre file—take intervals.* 3. MARCH (or *double quick*—MARCH).

156. At the first command, the chief of the first platoon will caution his platoon to stand fast; the chiefs of sections of the second platoon will place themselves before the centre of their sections; the fifth sergeant will place himself one pace in front of the centre of the second platoon.

157. At the second command, the chief of the right section, second platoon, will command: *Section right face;* the chief of the left section: *Section left face.*

158. At the command *march*, these sections will move off briskly in opposite directions, and having unmasked the first platoon, the chiefs of sections will respectively command: *By the left flank*—MARCH, and *By the right flank*—MARCH; and as soon as these sections arrive on the alignment of the first platoon,

they will command, *As skirmishers*—MARCH. The groups will then deploy according to prescribed principles, on the right group of the left section, which will be directed by the fifth sergeant on the point indicated.

159. If the captain should wish the deployment made by the flank, the second platoon will be moved to the front by the means above stated, and halted after passing some steps beyond the alignment of the first platoon; the deployment will then be made by the flank, according to the principles prescribed.

160. When one or more platoons are deployed as skirmishers, and the captain should wish to rally them on the battalion, he will command:

Rally on the battalion.

161. At this command, the skirmishers and the reserve, no matter what position the company to which they belong may occupy in order of battle, will rapidly unmask the front of the battalion, directing themselves in a run towards its nearest flank, and then form in its rear.

162. As soon as the skirmishers have passed beyond the line of file-closers, the men will take the quick step, and the chief of each platoon or section will reform his subdivision, and place it in column behind the wing on which it is rallied, and at ten paces from the rank of file-closers. These subdivisions will not be moved except by order of the commander of the battalion, who may, if he thinks proper, throw them into line of battle at the extremities of the line, or in the intervals between the battalions.

163. If many platoons should be united behind the same wing of a battalion, or behind any shelter whatsoever, they should be formed always into close column, or into column at half distance.

164. When the battalion, covered by a company of skirmishers, shall be formed into square, the platoons

and sections of the covering company will be directed by their chiefs to the rear of the square, which will be opened at the angles to receive the skirmishers, who will be then formed into close column by platoons in rear of the first front of the square.

165. If circumstances should prevent the angles of the square from being opened, the skirmishers will throw themselves at the feet of the front rank men, the right knee on the ground, the butt of the piece resting on the thigh, the bayonet in a threatening position. A part may also place themselves about the angles, where they can render good service by defending the sectors without fire.

166. If the battalion on which the skirmishers are rallied be in column ready to form square, the skirmishers will be formed into close column by platoon, in rear of the centre of the third division, and at the command, *Form square*—MARCH, they will move forward and close on the buglers.

167. When skirmishers have been rallied by platoon or section behind the wings of a battalion, and it be wished to deploy them again to the front, they will be marched by the flank towards the intervals on the wings, and be then deployed so as to cover the front of the battalion.

168. When platoons or sections, placed in the interior of squares or columns, are to be deployed, they will be marched out by the flanks, and then thrown forward, as is prescribed, No. 157; as soon as they shall have unmasked the column or square, they will be deployed, the one on the right, the other on the left file.

The assembly.

169. A company deployed as skirmishers will be assembled when there is no longer danger of its being disturbed; the assembly will be made habitually in quick time.

170. The captain wishing to assemble the skirmishers on the reserve, will command:

Assemble on the reserve.

171. At this command, the skirmishers will assemble by groups of fours; the front rank men will place themselves behind their rear rank men; and each group of fours will direct itself on the reserve, where each will take its proper place in the ranks. When the company is re-formed, it will rejoin the battalion to which it belongs.

172. It may be also proper to assemble the skirmishers on the centre, or on the right or left of the line, either marching or at a halt.

173. If the captain should wish to assemble them on the centre while marching, he will command:

Assemble on the centre.

174. At this command, the centre guide will continue to march directly to the front on the point indicated; the front rank man of the directing file will follow the guide, and be covered by his rear rank man; the other two comrades of this group, and likewise those on their left, will march diagonally, advancing the left shoulder and accelerating the gait, so as to reform the groups while drawing nearer and nearer the directing file; the men of the right section will unite in the same manner into groups, and then upon the directing file, throwing forward the right shoulder. As they successively unite on the centre, the men will bring their pieces to the right shoulder.

175. To assemble on the right or left file will be executed according to the same principles.

176. The assembly of a line marching in retreat will also be executed according to the same principles, the front rank men marching behind their rear rank men.

177. To assemble the line of skirmishers at a halt, and on the line they occupy, the captain will give the same commands; the skirmishers will face to the right or left, according as they should march by the right or left flank, re-form the groups while marching, and thus arrive on the file which served as the point of formation. As they successively arrive, the skirmishers will support arms.

Article Fifth.

To deploy a battalion as skirmishers, and to rally this battalion.

To deploy the battalion as skirmishers.

178. A battalion being in line of battle, if the commander should wish to deploy it on the right of the sixth company, holding the three right companies in reserve, he will signify his intention to the lieutenant colonel and adjutant, and also to the major, who will be directed to take charge of the reserve. He will point out to the lieutenant colonel the direction he wishes to give the line, as well as the point where he wishes the right of the sixth company to rest, and to the commander of the reserve the place he may wish it established.

179. The lieutenant colonel will move rapidly in front of the right of the sixth company, and the adjutant in front of the left of the same company. The commander of the reserve will dispose of it in the manner to be hereinafter indicated.

180. The colonel will command:

1. *First* (or *second*) *platoons—as skirmishers.*
2. *On the right of the sixth company—take intervals.*
3. March (or *double quick*—March).

181. At the second command, the captains of the fifth and sixth companies will prepare to deploy the first platoons of their respective companies, the sixth on its right, the fifth on its left file.

182. The captain of the fourth company will face it to the right, and the captains of the seventh and eighth companies will face their respective companies to the left.

183. At the command *march*, the movement will commence. The platoons of the fifth and sixth companies will deploy forward; the right guide of the sixth will march on the point which will be indicated to him by the lieutenant colonel.

184. The company which has faced to the right, and also the companies which have faced to the left, will march straight forward. The fourth company will take an interval of one hundred paces counting from the left of the fifth, and its chief will deploy its first platoon on its left file. The seventh and eighth companies will each take an interval of one hundred paces, counting from the first file of the company, which is immediately on its right; and the chiefs of these companies will afterwards deploy their first platoons on the right file.

185. The guides who conduct the files on which the deployment is made, should be careful to direct themselves towards the outer man of the neighboring company, already deployed as skirmishers; or if the company has not finished its deployment, they will judge carefully the distance which may still be required to place all these files in line, and will then march on the point thus marked out. The companies, as they arrive on the line, will align themselves on those already deployed.

186. The lieutenant colonel and adjutant will follow the deployment, the one on the right, the other on the left; the movement concluded, they will place themselves near the colonel.

187. The reserves of the companies will be established in echellon in the following manner: the reserve of the sixth company will be placed one hundred and fifty paces in rear of the right of this company; the reserves of the fourth and fifth companies, united, opposite the centre of their line of skirmishers, and thirty paces in advance of the reserve of the sixth company; the reserves of the seventh and eighth companies, also united, opposite the centre of their line of skirmishers, and thirty paces farther to the rear than the reserve of the sixth company.

188. The major commanding the companies composing the reserve, on receiving an order from the colonel to that effect, will march these companies thirty paces to the rear, and will then ploy them into column by company, at half distance; after which, he will conduct the column to the point which shall have been indicated to him.

189. The colonel will have a general superintendence of the movement; and when it is finished, will move to a point in rear of the line, whence his view may best embrace all the parts, in order to direct their movements.

190. If, instead of deploying forward, it be desired to deploy by the flank, the sixth and fifth companies will be moved to the front ten or twelve paces, halted, and deployed by the flank, the one on the right, the other on the left file, by the means already indicated. Each of the other companies will be marched by the flank; and as soon as the last file of the company, next towards the direction, shall have taken its interval, it will be moved upon the line established by the fifth and sixth companies, halted, and deployed.

191. In the preceding example, it has been supposed that the battalion was in order of battle; but if in column, it would be deployed as skirmishers by the same commands and according to the same principles.

192. If the deployment is to be made *forward*, the

directing company, as soon as it is unmasked, will be moved ten or twelve paces in front of the head of the column, and will be then deployed on the file indicated. Each of the other companies will take its interval to the right or left, and deploy as soon as it is taken.

193. If the deployment is to be made by the flank, the directing company will be moved in the same manner to the front, as soon as it is unmasked, and will then be halted and deployed by the flank on the file indicated. Each of the other companies will be marched by the flank, and when its interval is taken, will be moved on the line, halted and deployed as soon as the company next towards the direction shall have finished its deployment.

194. It has been prescribed to place the reserves in echellon, in order that they may, in the event of a rally, be able to protect themselves without injuring each other; and the reserves of two contiguous companies have been united, in order to diminish the number of the echellons, and to increase their capacity for resisting cavalry.

195. The echellons, in the example given, descend from right to left, but they may, on an indication from the colonel to that effect, be posted on the same principle, so as to descend from left to right.

196. When the color-company is to be deployed as skirmishers, the color, without its guard, will be detached, and remain with the battalion reserve.

The rally.

197. The colonel may cause all the various movements prescribed for a company, to be executed by the battalion, and by the same commands and the same signals. When he wishes to rally the battalion, he will cause the *rally on the battalion* to be sounded,

and will so dispose his reserve as to protect this movement.

198. The companies deployed as skirmishers will be rallied in squares on their respective reserves; each reserve of two contiguous companies will form the first front of the square, throwing to the rear the sections on the flanks; the skirmishers who arrive first will complete the lateral fronts, and the last the fourth front. The officers and sergeants will superintend the rally, and as fast as the men arrive, they will form them into two ranks, without regard to height, and cause them to face outwards.

199. The rally being effected, the commanders of squares will profit by any interval of time the cavalry may allow for putting them in safety, either by marching upon the battalion reserve, or by seizing an advantageous position; to this end, each of the squares will be formed into column, and march in this order; and if threatened anew, it will halt, and again form itself into square.

200. As the companies successively arrive near the battalion reserve, each will re-form as promptly as possible, and without regard to designation or number, take place in the column next in rear of the companies already in it.

201. The battalion-reserve will also form square, if itself threatened by cavalry. In this case, the companies marching towards it will place themselves promptly in the sector's without fire, and thus march on the squares.

ARTICLE XII.*

HONORS PAID BY THE TROOPS—INSPECTIONS—REVIEWS, ETC.

Honors to be paid by the troops.

730. Whenever a person entitled to compliments from the troops, visits any camp or military post, and the commanding officer has official notice of his presence, the troops are paraded to salute him.

The President or Vice-President of the Confederate States, and the Governor of the State to which the troops belong, are to be saluted with the highest honors—all standards and colors drooping, officers and troops saluting, drums beating and trumpets sounding.

A General commanding-in-chief is to be received—by cavalry, with sabres presented, trumpets sounding the march, and all the officers saluting, standards dropping; by infantry, with drums beating the march, colors dropping, officers saluting and arms presented.

A Major-General is to be received—by cavalry, with sabres presented, trumpets sounding twice the trumpet-flourish, and officers saluting; by infantry, with three ruffles, colors dropping, officers saluting, and arms presented.

A Brigadier-General is to be received—by cavalry, with sabres presented, trumpets sounding once the trumpet-flourish, and officers saluting; by infantry, with two ruffles, colors dropping, officers saluting, and arms presented.

---

*Gilham's Manual.

An Adjutant-General or Inspector General, if under the rank of a general officer, is to be received at a review or inspection of the troops under arms—by cavalry, with sabres presented, officers saluting; by infantry, officers saluting and arms presented. The same honors to be paid to any field officer authorized to review and inspect the troops. When the inspecting officer is junior to the officer commanding the parade, no compliments will be paid: he will be received only with swords drawn and arms shouldered.

All guards are to turn out and present arms to general officers as often as they pass them, except the personal guards of general officers, which turn out only to the generals whose guards they are, and to officers of superior rank.

To commanders of regiments, garrison or camp, their own guard turn out, and present arms once a day; after which they turn out with shouldered arms.

To the members of the Cabinet; to the Chief Justice, the President of the Senate, and Speaker of the House of Representatives of the Confederate States; and to Governors within their respective States and Territories, the same honors will be paid as to a general commanding-in-chief.

Officers of a foreign service may be complimented with the honors due to their rank.

Confederate and foreign Envoys or Ministers will be received with the compliments due to a major-general.

731. The colors of a regiment passing a guard are to be saluted, the trumpets sounding, and the drums beating a march.

When general officers, or persons entitled to salute, pass in the rear of a guard, the officer is only to make his men stand shouldered, and not to face his guard about, or beat his drum.

When general officers, or persons entitled to a salute, pass guards while in the act of relieving, both

guards are to salute, receiving the word of command from the senior officer of the whole.

All guards are to be under arms when armed parties approach their posts; and to parties commanded by commissioned officers, they are to present their arms, drums beating a march, and officers saluting.

No compliments by guards or sentinels will be paid between *retreat* and *reveille*, except as prescribed for *grand rounds*.

All guards and sentinels are to pay the same compliments to the officers of the navy, marines and militia, in the service of the Confederate States, as are directed to be paid to the officers of the army, according to their relative ranks.

It is equally the duty of non-commissioned officers and soldiers, *at all times* and *in all situations*, to pay the proper compliments to officers of the navy and marines, and to officers of other regiments, when in uniform, as to officers of their own particular regiments and corps.

Courtesy among military men is indispensable to discipline. Respect to superiors will not be confined to obedience on duty, but will be extended to all occasions. It is always the duty of the inferior to accost or to offer first the customary salutation, and of the superior to return such complimentary notice.

Sergeants, with swords drawn, will salute by bringing them to a present; with muskets, by bringing the left hand across the body, so as to strike the musket near the right shoulder. Corporals out of the ranks, and privates not sentries, will carry their muskets at a shoulder as sergeants, and salute in like manner.

When a soldier without arms, or with side-arms only, meets an officer, he is to raise his hand to the right side of the visor of his cap, palm to the front, elbow raised as high as the shoulder, looking at the same time in a respectful and soldier-like manner at

the officer, who will return the compliment thus offered.

A non-commissioned officer or soldier being seated, and without particular occupation, will rise on the approach of an officer, and make the customary salutation. If standing, he will turn toward the officer for the same purpose. If the parties remain in the same place or on the same ground, such compliment need not be repeated.

Artillery Salutes.

732. The President of the Confederate States and the Governor of the State to which the troops belong, to receive a salute of twenty-one guns.

The Vice-President is to receive a salute of seventeen guns.

The Heads of the great Executive Departments of the National Government; the General commanding the army; the Lieutenant-Governor of the State to which the troops belong; the Governors of other States and Territories, fifteen guns.

A Major-General, thirteen guns.

A Brigadier-General, eleven guns.

Foreign ships-of-war will be saluted in return for a similar compliment, gun for gun, on notice being officially received of such intention. If there be several posts in sight of, or within six miles of each other, the principal only shall reciprocate compliments with ships passing.

Officers of the Navy will be saluted according to relative rank.

Foreign Officers invited to visit a fort or post may be saluted according to their relative rank.

Envoys and Ministers of the Confederate States and foreign Powers, are to be saluted with thirteen guns.

A general officer will be saluted but once in a year

at each post, and only when notice of his intention to visit the post has been given.

Salutes to individuals are to be fired on their arrival only.

Escorts of Honor.

733. Escorts of honor may be composed of cavalry or infantry, or both, according to circumstances. They are guards of honor for the purpose of receiving and escorting personages of high rank, civil or military. The troops, for this purpose, will be selected for their soldierly appearance and superior discipline.

The escort will be drawn up in line, the centre opposite to the place where the personage presents himself, with an interval between the wings to receive him and his retinue. On his appearance, he will be received with the honors due to his rank. When he has taken his place in the line, the whole will be wheeled into platoons or companies, as the case may be, and take up the march. The same ceremony will be observed, and the same honors paid, on his leaving the escort.

When the position of the escort is at a considerable distance from the point where he is expected to be received, as, for instance, where a court-yard or wharf intervenes, a double line of sentinels will be posted from that point to the escort, facing inward, and the sentinels will successively salute as he passes.

An officer will be appointed to attend him, to bear such communications as he may have to make to the commander of the escort.

Funeral Honors.

734. The funeral escort of a General commanding-in-chief, shall consist of a regiment of infantry, a squadron of cavalry, and six pieces of artillery.

That of a Major-General, a regiment of infantry, a squadron of cavalry, and four pieces of artillery.

That of a Brigadier-General, a regiment of infantry, one company of cavalry, and two pieces of artillery.

That of a Colonel, a regiment.

That of a Lieutenant-Colonel, six companies.

That of a Major, four companies.

That of a Captain, one company.

That of a Subaltern, half a company.

The funeral escort shall always be commanded by an officer of the same rank with the deceased; or, if none such be present, by one of the next inferior grade.

The funeral escort of a non-commissioned staff officer shall consist of sixteen rank and file, commanded by a sergeant.

That of a sergeant, of fourteen rank and file, commanded by a sergeant.

That of a corporal, of twelve rank and file, commanded by a corporal; and,

That of a private, of eight rank and file, commanded by a corporal.

The escort will be formed in two ranks, opposite to the quarters or tent of the deceased, with shouldered arms and bayonets unfixed; the artillery and cavalry on the right of the infantry.

On the appearance of the corpse, the officer commanding the escort will command:

Present—ARMS;

when the honors due to the deceased will be paid by the drums and trumpets. The music will then play an appropriate air, and the coffin will then be taken to the right, where it will be halted. The commander will next order:

1. *Shoulder*—ARMS. 2. *By company* (or *platoon*) *left wheel.* 3. MARCH. 4. *Reverse*—ARMS. 5. *Column, forward.* 6. *Guide right.* 7. MARCH.

The arms will be reversed at the order by bringing the firelock under the left arm, butt to the front, barrel downward, left hand sustaining the lock, the right steadying the firelock behind the back; swords are reversed in a similar manner under the right arm.

The column will be marched in slow time to solemn music, and, on reaching the grave, will take a direction so that the guides shall be next to the grave. When the centre of the column is opposite the grave, the commander will order:

1. *Column.* 2. HALT. 3. *Right into line, wheel.* 4. MARCH.

The coffin is then brought along the front, to the opposite side of the grave, and the commander then orders:

1. *Shoulder*—ARMS. 2. *Present*—ARMS.

And when the coffin reaches the grave, he adds:

1. *Shoulder*—ARMS. 2. *Rest on*—ARMS.

The rest on arms is done by placing the muzzle on the left foot, both hands on the butt, the head on the hands or bowed, right knee bent.

After the funeral service is performed, and the coffin is lowered into the grave, the commander will order:

1. *Attention.* 2. *Shoulder*—ARMS. 3. *Load at will.* 4. LOAD.

When three rounds of small arms will be fired by the escort, taking care to elevate the pieces.

This being done, the commander will order:

1. *By company* (or *platoon*), *right wheel.* 2. MARCH.
3. *Column, forward.* 4. *Guide left.* 5. *Quick*—MARCH.

The music will not begin to play until the escort is clear of the enclosure.

When the distance to the place of interment is considerable, the escort may march in common time and in column of route, after leaving the camp or garrison, and till it approaches the burial-ground.

The pall-bearers, six in number, will be selected from the grade of the deceased, or from the grade or grades next above or below it.

At the funeral of an officer, as many in commission of the army, division, brigade, or regiment, according to the rank of the deceased, as can conveniently be spared from other duties, will join in procession, in uniform, and with side-arms. The funeral of a non-commissioned officer or private will be attended, in like manner, by the non-commissioned officers or privates of the regiment or company, according to the rank of the deceased, with side-arms only.

Persons joining in the procession follow the coffin in the inverse order of their rank.

The usual badge of military mourning is a piece of black crape around the left arm, above the elbow, and also upon the sword-hilt; and will be worn when in full or in undress.

As family mourning, crape will be worn by officers (when in uniform) only around the left arm.

The drums of a funeral escort will be covered with black crape, or thin black serge.

Funeral honors will be paid to deceased officers without military rank according to their assimilated grades.

Inspections of the Troops.

735. The inspection of troops, as a division, regiment, or other body composing a garrison or command, not less than a company, will generally be preceded by a review.

Form of inspection for infantry.

The present example embraces a battalion of infantry. The inspecting officer and the field and staff officers will be on foot.

The battalion being in the order of battle, the colonel will cause it to break into open column of companies, right in front. He will next order the ranks to be opened, when the color-rank and color-guard, under the direction of the adjutant, will take post ten paces in front, and the band ten paces in rear of the column.

The colonel, seeing the ranks aligned, will command:

1. *Officers and sergeants, to the front of your companies.*
2. MARCH.

The officers will form themselves in one rank, eight paces, and the non-commissioned officers in one rank, six paces, in advance, along the whole fronts of their respective companies, from right to left, in the order of seniority; the pioneers and music of each company, in one rank, two paces behind the non-commissioned officers.

The colonel will next command:

Field and staff, to the front—MARCH.

The commissioned officers thus designated will form themselves in one rank, on a line equal to the front of the column, six paces in front of the colors, from right to left, in the order of seniority; and the non-commissioned staff, in a similar manner, two paces in rear of

the preceding rank. The colonel, seeing the movement executed, will take post on the right of the lieutenant-colonel, and wait the approach of the inspecting officer. But such of the field officers as may be superior in rank to the inspector will not take post in front of the battalion.

The inspector will commence in front. After inspecting the dress and general appearance of the field and commissioned staff under arms, the inspector, accompanied by these officers, will pass down the open column, looking at every rank in front and rear.

The colonel will now command:

1. *Order*—ARMS. 2. REST;

when the inspector will proceed to make a minute inspection of the several ranks or divisions, in succession, commencing in front.

As the inspector approaches the non-commissioned staff, color-rank, the color-guard, and the band, the adjutant will give the necessary orders for the inspection of arms, boxes, and knapsacks. The colors will be planted firm in the ground, to enable the color-bearers to display the contents of their knapsacks. The non-commissioned staff may be dismissed as soon as inspected; but the color-rank and color-guard will remain until the colors are to be escorted to the place from which they were taken.

As the inspector successively approaches the companies, the captains will command:

1. *Attention.* 2. *Company.* 3. *Inspection*—ARMS.

The inspecting officer will then go through the whole company, and minutely inspect the arms, accoutrements, and dress of each soldier. After this is done, the captain will command:

Open—BOXES;

when the ammunition and the boxes will be examined.

The captain will then command:

1. *Shoulder*—ARMS. 2. *Close order.* 3. MARCH. 4. *Order*—ARMS. 5. *Stack*—ARMS. 6. *To the rear, open order.* 7. MARCH. 8. *Front rank*—ABOUT—FACE. 9. *Unsling—Knapsacks.* 10. *Open—Knapsacks.*

The sergeants will face inward at the second command, and close upon the centre at the third, and stack their arms at the fifth command; at the sixth command they face outward, and resume their positions at the seventh. When the ranks are closed, preparatory to *take arms*, the sergeants will also close upon the centre, and at the word, take their arms and resume their places.

The knapsacks will be placed at the feet of the men, the flaps from them, with the great-coats on the flaps, and the knapsacks leaning on the great-coats. In this position the inspector will examine their contents, or so many of them as he may think necessary, commencing with the non-commissioned officers, the men standing at attention.

When the inspector has passed through the company, the captain will command:

Repack—Knapsacks;

when each soldier will repack and buckle up his knapsack, leaving it on the ground, the number upward, turned from him, and then stand at rest.

The captain will then command:

1. *Attention.* 2. *Company.* 3. *Sling—Knapsacks.*

At the word *sling*, each soldier will take his knapsack, holding it by the inner straps, and stand erect; at the last word he will replace it on his back. The captain will continue:

4. *Front rank*—ABOUT—FACE. 5. *Close order.* 6. MARCH. 7. *Take*—ARMS. 8. *Shoulder*—ARMS. 9. *Officers and Sergeants to your posts.* 10. MARCH.

And will cause the company to file off to their tents or quarters, except the company that is to re-escort the colors, which will await the further orders of the colonel.

In an extensive column, some of the rearmost companies may, after the inspection of dress, and general appearance, be permitted to *stack arms* until just before the inspector approaches them, when they will be directed to *take arms* and resume their position.

The inspection of the troops being ended, the field and staff will next accompany the inspector to the hospital, magazine, arsenal, quarters, sutler's shop, guard-house, and such other places as he may think proper to inspect. The captains and subalterns repair to their companies and sections to await the inspector.

The hospital being at all times an object of particular interest, it will be critically and minutely inspected.

The men will be formed in the company quarters in front of their respective bunks, and on the entrance of the inspector the word *attention* will be given by the senior non-commissioned officer present, when the whole will salute with the hand without uncovering.

The inspector, attended by the company officers, will examine the general arrangement of the interior of the quarters, the bunks, bedding, cooking, and table utensils, and such other objects as may present themselves; and afterwards the exterior.

The adjutant will exhibit to the inspector the regimental books and papers, including those relating to the transactions of the Council of Administration. The company books and papers will also be exhibited, the whole together, generally at the adjutant's office, and in the presence of the officers not otherwise particularly engaged.

The inspector will examine critically the books and accounts of the administrative and disbursing officers of the command, and the money and property in their keeping.

FORMS OF PARADE.

737. On all parades of ceremony, such as Reviews, Guard-mounting, at *Troop* or *Retreat* parades, instead of the word *rest*, which allows the men to move or change the position of their bodies, the command will be *parade—rest.* At the last word of this command, the soldier will carry the right foot six inches in the rear of the left heel, the left knee slightly bent, the body upright upon the right leg; the musket resting against the hollow of the right shoulder, the hands crossed in front, the backs of them outward, and the left hand uppermost. At the word *attention*, the soldier will resume the correct position at ordered arms. In the positions here indicated, the soldier will remain silent and motionless; and it is particularly enjoined upon all officers to cause the commands above given, on the part of the soldier, to be executed with great briskness and spirit.

Officers on all duties under arms are to have their swords drawn, without waiting for any words of command for that purpose.

* *To form the regiment or battalion.*

297. At the signal, called the *Adjutant's call*, the companies are marched from the company parades by their captains, the music playing. The color-company serves as the basis of the formation, and is the first to form; the color-guard being at the point where the centre of the line is to rest, one marker is placed in front of it, his right elbow touching the right corporal of the color-guard, and another on the line at a little less than company distance from him, on his right, and facing towards him; the color-company is halted three

* From Gilham's Manual. See School of the Battalion, No. 297.

paces behind this line, faced to the front and dressed up upon the line by the captain, who aligns it to the left.

The company on the left of the color is the next to take its post; it is halted three paces behind the line, its right nearly behind the left file of the color-guard, and faced to the front; as soon as it halts the left guide of the company throws himself out, so as to be opposite one of the three left files of the company, faces to the right, and aligns himself upon the two markers; the captain then places himself on the left of the color-guard, on a line with its front rank, and aligns the company to the right. The company on the right of the colors, forms next, upon the same principles; the right guide posts himself upon the line opposite one of the three right files of the company, and faces to the left; the captain places himself on the right of the color-company, and aligns his company to the left.

The remaining companies take their posts on the left and right in succession, and when the formation is complete, the adjutant commands: *Guides posts;* at this command, the guides on the line retire to their places by passing through the intervals between companies, and those captains who are on the left of their companies, shift to the right.

Dress parade.

738. There shall be daily one dress parade, at *troop* or *retreat*, as the commanding officer may direct.

A signal will be beat or sounded half an hour before *troop* or *retreat*, for the music to assemble on regimental parade, and each company to turn out under arms on its own parade, for roll-call and inspection by its own officers.

Ten minutes after that signal, the *Adjutant's call* will be given, when the captains will march their com-

panies (the band playing) to the regimental parade, where they take their positions in line as directed, No. 297. When the line is formed, the captain of the first company, on notice from the adjutant, steps one pace to the front, and gives to his company the command, *order arms; parade—rest;* which is repeated by each captain in succession to the left. The adjutant takes post two paces on the right of the line; the sergeant-major two paces on the left. The music will be formed in two ranks on the right of the adjutant. The senior officer present will take the command of the parade, and will take post at a suitable distance in front, opposite the centre, facing the line.

When the companies have ordered arms, the adjutant will order the music to *beat off*, when it will commence on the right, beat in front of the line to the left, and back to its place on the right.

When the music has ceased, the adjutant will step two paces to the front, face to the left, and command:

1. *Attention.* 2. *Battalion.* 3. *Shoulder*—ARMS. 4. *Prepare to open ranks.* 5. *To the rear open order.* 6. MARCH.

At the sixth command, the ranks will be opened according to the system laid down in the Infantry Tactics, the commissioned officers marching to the front, the company officers four paces, field officers six paces, opposite to their positions in the order of battle, where they will halt and dress. The adjutant, seeing the ranks aligned, will command:

FRONT,

and march along the front to the centre, face to the right, and pass the line of company officers eight or ten paces, when he will come to the right about, and command:

Present—ARMS;

when arms will be presented, officers saluting.

Seeing this executed, he will face about to the commanding officer, salute, and report, "*Sir, the parade is formed.*" The adjutant will then, on intimation to that effect, take his station three paces on the left of the commanding officer, one pace retired, passing round his rear.

The commanding officer, having acknowledged the salute of the line by touching his hat, will, after the adjutant has taken his post, draw his sword, and command:

1. *Battalion.* 2. *Shoulder*—ARMS;

and add such exercises as he may think proper, concluding with:

Order—ARMS;

then return his sword, and direct the adjutant to receive the reports.

The adjutant will now pass round the right of the commanding officer, advance upon the line, halt midway between him and the line of company officers, and command:

1. *First sergeants, to the front and centre.* 2. MARCH.

At the first command, they will *shoulder arms* as sergeants, march two paces to the front, and face inward. At the second command, they will march to the centre, and halt. The adjutant will then order:

1. *Front*—FACE. 2. *Report.*

At the last word, each in succession, beginning on the right, will salute by bringing the left hand smartly across the breast to the right shoulder, and report the result of the roll-call previously made on the company parade.

The adjutant again commands:

1. *First sergeants, outward*—FACE. 2. *To your posts*—MARCH;

when they will resume their places, and order arms. The adjutant will now face to the commanding officer, salute, report absent officers, and give the result of the first sergeant's reports. The commanding officer will next direct the orders to be read, when the adjutant will face about, and announce:

Attention to Orders.

He will then read the orders.

The orders having been read, the adjutant will face to the commanding officer, salute, and report; when, on an intimation from the commander, he will face again to the line, and announce:

Parade is dismissed.

All the officers will now return their swords, face inward, and close on the adjutant, he having taken position in their line, the field officers on the flanks. The adjutant commands:

1. *Front*—FACE. 2. *Forward*—MARCH;

when they will march forward, dressing on the centre, the music playing, and when within six paces of the commander, the adjutant will give the word:

HALT.

The officers will then salute the commanding officer by raising the hand to the cap, and there remain until he shall have communicated to them such instructions as he may have to give, or intimates that the ceremony is finished. As the officers disperse, the first sergeants will close the ranks of their respective companies, and

march them to the company parades, where they will be dismissed, the band continuing to play until the companies clear the regimental parade.

All field and company officers and men will be present at *dress parades*, unless especially excused, or on some duty incompatible with such attendance.

A dress parade once a day will not be dispensed with, except on extraordinary and urgent occasions.

Review of a battalion of infantry.

739. Preparatory to a review, the adjutant will cause a camp color to be placed 80 or 100 paces, or more, according to the length of the line, in front of, and opposite to, where the centre of the battalion will rest, where the reviewing officer is supposed to take his station; and, although he may choose to quit that position, still the color is to be considered as the point to which all the movements and formations are relative.

The adjutant will also cause points to be marked at suitable distances, for the wheelings of the divisions; so that their right flanks, in marching past, shall only be about four paces from the camp-color, where it is supposed the reviewing officer places himself to receive the salute.

The battalion being formed in the order of battle, at *shouldered arms*, the colonel will command:

1. *Battalion, prepare for review.* 2. *To the rear open order.* 3. MARCH.

At the word *march*, the field and staff officers dismount; the company officers and the color-rank advance four paces in front of the front rank, and place themselves opposite to their respective places, in the order of battle. The color-guard replace the color-rank. The staff officers place themselves, according to rank, three paces on the right of the rank of company officers, and one pace from each other; the music

takes post as at a parade. The non-commissioned staff take post one pace from each other, and three paces on the right of the front rank of the battalion.

When the ranks are aligned, the colonel will command:

FRONT;

and place himself eight paces, and the lieutenant-colonel and major will place themselves two paces, in front of the rank of company officers, and opposite to their respective places in the order of battle, all facing to the front.

When the reviewing officer presents himself before the centre, and is fifty or sixty paces distant, the colonel will face about, and command:

Present—ARMS;

and resume his front. The men present arms, and the officers salute, so as to drop their swords with the last motion of the firelock. The non-commissioned staff salute by bringing the sword to a *poise*, the hilt resting on the breast, the blade in front of the face, inclining a little outward. The music will play, and all the drums beat, according to the rank of the reviewing officer. The colors only salute such persons as, from their rank, and by regulation (see No. 730), are entitled to that honor. If the reviewing officer be junior in rank to the commandant of the parade, no compliment will be paid to him, but he will be received with arms carried, and the officers will not salute as the column passes in review.

The reviewing officer having halted, and acknowledged the salute of the line by touching or raising his cap or hat, the colonel will face about and command:

Shoulder—ARMS;

when the men shoulder their pieces; the officers and

non-commissioned staff recover their swords with the last motion, and the colonel faces to the front.

The reviewing officer will then go towards the right, the whole remaining perfectly steady, without paying any further compliment, while he passes along the front of the battalion, and proceeds round the left flank, and along the rear of the file-closers to the right. While the reviewing officer is going round the battalion, the band will play, and will cease when he has returned to the right flank of the troops.

When the reviewing officer turns off, to place himself by the camp-color in front, the colonel will face to the line and command:

1. *Close order.* 2. MARCH.

At the first command, the field and company officers will face to the *right about*, and at the second command, all persons, except the colonel, will resume their places in the order of battle; the field and staff officers mount.

The reviewing officer having taken his position near the camp-color, the colonel will command:

1. *By company, right wheel.* 2. *Quick*—MARCH. 3. *Pass in review.* 4. *Column, forward.* 5. *Guide right.* 6. MARCH.

The battalion, in column of companies, right in front, will then, in common time, and at *shouldered arms*, be put in motion; the colonel four paces in front of the captain of the leading company; the lieutenant-colonel on a line with the leading company; the major on a line with the rear company; the adjutant on a line with the second company; the sergeant-major on a line with the company next preceding the rear; each six paces from the flank (left) opposite to the reviewing officer; the staff officers in one rank, according to the order of precedency, from the right, four paces in rear of the column; the music, preceded by the principal musician, six paces before the colo-

nel; the pioneers, preceded by a corporal, four paces before the principal musician: and the quartermaster-sergeant two paces from the side opposite to the guides, and in line with the pioneers.

All other officers and non-commissioned officers will march past in the places prescribed for them in the march of an open column. The guides and soldiers will keep their heads steady to the front in passing in review.

The color-bearer will remain in the ranks while passing and saluting.

The music will begin to play at the command to march, and after passing the reviewing officer, wheel to the left out of the column, and take a position opposite and facing him, and will continue to play until the rear of the column shall have passed him, when it will cease, and follow in the rear of the battalion, unless the battalion is to pass in *quick time* also, in which case it will keep its position.

The officers will salute the reviewing officer when they arrive within six paces of him, and recover their swords when six paces past him. All officers, in saluting, will cast their eyes towards the reviewing officer.

The colonel, when he has saluted at the head of the battalion, will place himself near the reviewing officer, and will remain there until the rear has passed, when he will rejoin the battalion.

The colors will salute the reviewing officer, if entitled to it, when within six paces of him, and be raised when they have passed by him an equal distance. The drums will beat a march, or ruffle, according to the rank of the reviewing officer, at the same time that the colors salute.

When the column has passed the reviewing officer, the colonel will direct it to the ground it marched from, and command:

Guide left;

in time for the guides to cover. The column having arrived on its ground, the colonel will command:

1. *Column.* 2. HALT;

form it in order of battle, and cause the ranks to be opened. The review will terminate by the whole saluting as at the beginning.

If, however, instructions have been previously given to march the troops past in *quick time* also, the colonel will, instead of changing the guides, halting the column, and wheeling it into line, as above directed, give the command:

1. *Quick time.* 2. MARCH.

In passing the reviewing officer again, no salute will be offered by either officers or men. The music will have kept its position opposite the reviewing officer, and at the last command will commence playing, and, as the column approaches, will place itself in front of, and march off with the column, and continue to play until the battalion is halted on its original ground of formation. The review will terminate in the same manner as prescribed above.*

The colonel will afterwards cause the troops to perform such exercises and manœuvres as the reviewing officer may direct.

When two or more battalions are to be reviewed, they will be formed in parade order, with the proper intervals, and will also perform the same movements that are laid down for a single battalion, observing the additional directions that are given for such movements when applied to the line. The brigadier general and his staff, on foot, will place themselves opposite

---

*Or the battalion may pass a third time at double quick, and then re-form.

the centre of the brigade; the brigadier-general two paces in front of the rank of colonels; his aid two paces on his right, and one retired; and the other brigade staff officers, those having the rank of field officers, in the rank of lieutenant colonels and majors; and those below that rank, in the rank of company officers.

In passing in review, a major-general will be four paces in front of the colonel of the leading battalion of his division; and the brigadier-general will be on the right of the colonels of the leading battalions of their brigades; staff officers on the left of their generals.

When the line exceeds two battalions, the reviewing officer may cause them to march past in quick time only. In such cases the mounted officers only will salute.

A number of companies less than a battalion will be reviewed as a battalion, and a single company as if it were with the battalion. In the latter case, the company may pass in column of platoons.

If the several brigades are to be reviewed together, or in one line, this further difference will be observed: the reviewing personage, joined by the general of the division, on the right of his division, will proceed down the line, parallel to its front, and when near the brigadier-generals respectively, will be saluted by their brigades in succession. The music of each, after the prescribed salute, will play while the reviewing personage is in front, or in rear of it, and only then.

In marching in review, with several battalions in common time, the music of each succeeding battalion will commence to play when the music of the preceding one has ceased, in order to follow its battalion. When marching in quick time, the music will begin to play when the rear company of the preceding battalion has passed the reviewing officer.

The reviewing officer or personage will acknowledge the salute by raising, or taking off, his hat or cap, when the commander of the troops salutes him; and also when the colors pass. The remainder of the time occupied by the passage of the troops he will be covered.

Guard-mounting.

742. At the first call for guard-mounting, the men warned for duty turn out on their company parades for inspection by the first sergeants; and at the second call, repair to the regimental or garrison parade, conducted by the first sergeants. Each detachment, as it arrives, will, under the direction of the adjutant, take post on the left of the one that preceded it, in open order, arms shouldered, and bayonets fixed; the supernumeraries five paces in the rear of the men of their respective companies; the first sergeants in rear of them. The sergeant-major will dress the ranks, count the files, verify the details, and when the guard is formed, report to the adjutant, and take post two paces on the left of the front rank.

The adjutant then commands *front*, when the officer of the guard takes post twelve paces in front of the centre, the sergeants in one rank, four paces in the rear of the officers; and the corporals in one rank, four paces in the rear of the sergeants—all facing to the front. The adjutant then assigns their places in the guard.

The adjutant will then command:

1. *Officer and non-commissioned officers.* 2. *About*—FACE. 3. *Inspect your guards*—MARCH.

The non-commissioned officers then take their posts. The commander of the guard then commands:

1. *Order*—ARMS. 2. *Inspection*—ARMS;

and inspects his guard. When there is no commissioned officer on the guard, the adjutant will inspect it. During inspection, the band will play.

The inspection ended, the officer of the guard takes post as though the guard were a company of a battalion, in open order, under review; at the same time, also, the officers of the day will take post in front of the centre of the guard; the old officer of the day three paces on the right of the new officer of the day, one pace retired.

The adjutant will now command:

1. *Parade*—REST. 2. *Troop*—BEAT OFF;

when the music, beginning on the right, will beat down the line on front of the officer of the guard to the left, and back to its place in the right, where it will cease to play.

The adjutant then commands:

1. *Attention.* 2. *Shoulder*—ARMS. 3. *Close order*—MARCH.

At the word *close order*, the officer will face about; at *march*, resume his post in line.

The adjutant then commands:

Present—ARMS.

At which he will face to the new officer of the day, salute, and report, "*Sir, the guard is formed.*" The new officer of the day, after acknowledging the salute, will direct the adjutant to march the guard in review, or by flank to its post. But if the adjutant be senior to the officer of the day, he will report without saluting with the sword then, or when marching the guard in review.

In review, the guard march past the officer of the day, according to the order of review, conducted by

the adjutant, marching on the left of the first division; the sergeant-major on the left of the last division.

When the column has passed the officer of the day, the officer of the guard marches it to its post, the adjutant and sergeant-major retiring. The music, which has wheeled out of the column, and taken post opposite the officer of the day, will cease, and the old officer of the day salute, and give the old or standing orders to the new officer of the day. The supernumeraries, at the same time, will be marched by the first sergeants to their respective company parades, and dismissed.

In bad weather, or at night, or after fatiguing marches, the ceremony of turning off may be dispensed with, but not the inspection.

Grand guards, and other brigade guards, are organized and mounted on the brigade parade by the staff officer of the parade, under the direction of the field officer of the day of the brigade, according to the principles here prescribed for a police guard of a regiment. The detail of each regiment is assembled on the regimental parade, verified by the adjutant, and marched to the brigade parade by the senior officer of the detail. After inspection and review, the officer of the day directs the several guards to their respective posts.

The officer of the old guard, having his guard paraded, on the approach of the new guard, commands:

Present—Arms.

The new guard will march, in quick time, past the old guard, at *shouldered arms*, officers saluting, and take post four paces on its right, where, being aligned with it, its commander will order:

Present—Arms.

The two officers will then approach each other, and salute. They will then return to their respective guards, and command:

1. *Shoulder*—ARMS. 2. *Order*—ARMS.

The officer of the new guard will now direct the detail for the advanced guard to be formed and marched to its post, the list of the guard made and divided into three reliefs, experienced soldiers placed over the arms of the guard, and at the remote and responsible posts, and the young soldiers in posts near the guard for instruction in their duties, and will himself proceed to take possession of the guard-house, or guard-tent, and the articles and prisoners in charge of the guard.

During the time of relieving the sentinels, and of calling in the small posts, the old commander will give to the new all the information and instructions relating to his post.

The first relief having been designated and ordered two paces to the front, the corporal of the new guard will take charge of it, and go to relieve the sentinels, accompanied by the corporal of the old guard, who will take command of the old sentinels, when the whole are relieved.

If the sentinels are numerous, the sergeants are to be employed, as well as the corporals, in relieving them.

The relief, with arms at a support, in two ranks, will march by a flank, conducted by the corporal on the side of the leading front-rank man; and the men will be numbered alternately in the front and rear rank, the man on the right of the front rank being No. 1. Should an officer approach, the corporal will command *carry arms*, and resume the *support arms* when the officer is passed.

The sentinels at the guard-house or guard-tent will be the first relieved and left behind; the others are relieved in succession.

When a sentinel sees the relief approaching, he will halt and face to it with his arms at a shoulder. At six paces, the corporal will command:

1. *Relief.* 2. HALT.

When the relief will halt and carry arms. The corporal will then add, "No. 1," or "No. 2," or "No. 3," according to the number of the post:

Arms—PORT.

The two sentinels will, with arms at *port*, then approach each other, when the old sentinel, under the correction of the corporal, will whisper the instructions to the new sentinel. This done, the two sentinels will shoulder arms, and the old sentinel will pass, in quick time, to his place in rear of the relief. The corporal will then command:

1. *Support*—ARMS. 2. *Forward.* 3. MARCH.

And the relief proceeds in the same manner until the whole are relieved.

The detachments and sentinels from the old guard having come in, it will be marched, at *shouldered arms*, along the front of the new guard, in quick time, the new guard standing at *presented arms;* officers saluting, and the music of both guards beating, except at the outposts.

On arriving at the regimental or garrison parade, the commander of the old guard will send the detachments composing it, under charge of the non-commissioned officers, to their respective regiments. Before the men are dismissed, their pieces will be drawn or discharged at a target. On rejoining their companions, the chiefs of squads will examine the arms, etc., of their men, and cause the whole to be put away in good order.

When the old guard has marched off fifty paces, the officer of the new guard will order his men to stack their arms, or place them in the arm-racks.

The commander of the guard will then make himself acquainted with all the instructions for his post, visit the sentinels, and question them and the non-commissioned officers relative to the instructions they may have received from other persons of the old guard.

Reception of one body of troops by another.

745. The commanding officer of the receiving corps, having notified the commander of the other body of his intention, brings his command into line, so that it shall be on the *right* of the route which it is intended the other shall take. The commander of the body receiving the compliment, should have his command in column right in front; and when he sees the other body in a line, or receives an intimation from its commanding officer, that he is ready to receive him, he puts his column in motion; when its head is within six paces of the left of the line on its right, the latter will be brought to a present, and will continue in that position until the rear of the column has passed the right of the line. The column passes at *shouldered arms*, each officer saluting as soon as he comes within six paces of the left of the line. When the rear of the column has passed some twenty-five or thirty paces beyond the right of the line, the column is brought into line, on the same side with the first line. As soon as this is done, the first line breaks into column right in front, and marches past the second, receiving the same compliments that it extended when the other body passed. After marching past, it may be formed into line again as it was at first, when both commands may be brought to an order, the officers advancing and being presented; or the column may

halt long enough to allow the other command, now in line, to re-form column, when both take up the march, the leading column serving as an escort for the other.

Musters.

747. Musters of the volunteers and militia are made at least once a year, by the brigade inspectors. Where troops are in actual service musters are made every two months; usually on the last day of every second month. In this case they are made by an inspector-general, if present, otherwise by an officer specially designated by the commander of the army, division, or brigade; and in the absence of the inspector-general or officer specially designated, the muster is made by the commander of the post.

When one inspecting officer cannot inspect all the troops himself on the day specified, the commanding officer will designate such other competent officers as may be necessary to assist him. All stated musters of the troops should be preceded by a minute and careful *inspection* in the prescribed mode; and if the command be more than a company, by a *review*, before inspection.

The mustering officer having inspected the companies in succession, beginning on the right, returns to the first company to muster it. The company being at *ordered arms*, with open ranks, as when inspected, the captains will, as the mustering officer approaches, command:

1. *Attention.* 2. *Company.* 3. *Shoulder*—ARMS. 4. *Support*—ARMS.

The mustering officer will then call over the names on the roll, and each man, as his name is called, will distinctly answer *here*, and bring his piece to a *carry*, and to an *order*.

After each company is mustered, the captain will order it to be marched to the company parade, and there dismissed to quarters, to await the inspector's visit. After mustering the companies, the mustering officer, attended by the company commanders, will visit the guard and hospital, to verify the presence of the men reported there. The muster and pay rolls are made on printed forms in accordance with the directions on them. On the muster rolls companies are designated by the name of the captain, whether present or absent. The pay roll is left blank to fill up by the paymaster.

The roster, or details for service.

748. The duties performed by detail are of three classes. The *first class* comprises, first, grand guards and outposts; second, interior guards, as of magazine, hospital, etc.; third, orderlies; fourth, police guards.

The *second class* comprises, first, detachments to protect labor on military works, as field works, communications, etc.; second, working parties on such works; third, detachments to protect fatigues.

The *third class* are all fatigues, without arms, in or out of camp. In the cavalry, stable-guards form a separate roster, and count before fatigue.

The rosters are distinct for each class. Officers are named on them in the order of rank. The details are taken in succession in the order of the roster, beginning at the head. Lieutenants form one roster; the first and second lieutenants are entered on it alternately. The senior first lieutenant is the first on the roster; the senior second lieutenant is the second, etc. The captains form one roster, and are exempt from fatigue, except to superintend issues. A captain commanding a battalion temporarily is exempt from detail, and duty falling to him passes. Lieutenant-

colonels and majors are on one roster. They may be detailed for duties of the first and second classes, when the importance of the guards and detachments requires it. Their roster is kept at division and brigade head-quarters. The rosters of the captains and lieutenants are kept at regimental head-quarters, and those of the companies by the first sergeants. In the company, sergeants, corporals, and privates form distinct rosters.

Officers, non-commissioned officers, and soldiers, take duties of the first class, in the order stated, viz: the first for the detail takes the grand guards; the next, the interior guards; the last, the police guard; and the same rule in regard to the details and duties of the second class. In the details for the third class, the senior officer takes the largest party. The party first for detail takes the service out of camp.

When the officer whose tour it is is not able to take it, or is not present at the hour of marching, the next after him takes it. When a guard has passed the chain of sentinels, or an interior guard has reached its post, the officer whose tour it was cannot then take it. He takes the tour of the officer who has taken his. When an officer is prevented by sickness from taking his tour, it passes. These rules apply equally to non-commissioned officers and soldiers.

Duties of the first and second class are credited on the roster when the guards or detachments have passed the chain of sentinels, or an interior guard has reached its post; fatigue duties when the parties have passed the chain or begun the duties in camp.

Every officer, non-commissioned officer, or soldier, on duty of the first class, or who is of the next detail for such duty, takes, when relieved, the duty of the second or third class that has fallen to him during that time, unless he has marched for detachment of more than twenty-four hours.

Soldiers march with knapsacks for all duties of the

first class; and with arms and equipments complete on all working parties out of camp, unless otherwise ordered. In the cavalry, horses are packed for all mounted service; and dismounted men, and those whose horses are not in order, are preferred for the detail for dismounted service. Those who are mounted are never employed on those services, if the number of the other class is sufficient.

Every non-commissioned officer and soldier in the cavalry detailed for dismounted service must, before he marches, take to the first sergeant of his troop, or sergeant of his squad, his horse equipments and valise ready packed. In case of alarm, the first sergeant sees that the horses of these men are equipped and led to the rendezvous.

In the field, artillery-men are not called upon for any duty outside of their own batteries or camps.

These rules in regard to the roster apply also to service in garrison.

Duties of guards.

749. Sentinels will be relieved every two hours, unless the state of the weather, or other causes, should make it necessary or proper that it be done at shorter or longer intervals.

Each relief, before mounting, is inspected by the commander of the guard, or of its post. The corporal reports to him, and presents the old relief on its return.

The *countersign*, or watchword, is given to such persons as are entitled to pass during the night, and to officers, non-commissioned officers, and sentinels of the guard. Interior guards receive the countersign only when ordered by the commander of the troops.

The *parole* is imparted to such officers only as have a right to visit the guards, and to make the grand rounds; and to officers commanding guards.

As soon as the new guard has been marched off, the officer of the day will repair to the office of the commanding officer and report for orders.

The officer of the day must see that the officer of the guard is furnished with the parole and countersign before *retreat.*

The officer of the day visits the guards during the day at such times as he may deem necessary, and makes his rounds at night at least once after 12 o'clock.

Upon being relieved, the officer of the day will make such remarks in the report of the officer of the guard as circumstances require, and present the same at head-quarters.

Commanders of guards leaving their posts to visit their sentinels, or on other duty, are to mention their intention, and the probable time of their absence, to the next in command.

The officers are to remain constantly at their guards, except while visiting their sentinels, or necessarily engaged elsewhere on their proper duty.

Neither officers nor soldiers are to take off their clothing or accoutrements while they are on guard.

The officer of the guard must see that the countersign is duly communicated to the sentinels a little before twilight.

When a fire breaks out, or any alarm is raised in a garrison, all guards are to be immediately under arms.

Inexperienced officers are put on guard as supernumeraries, for the purpose of instruction.

Sentinels will not take orders or allow themselves to be relieved, except by an officer or non-commissioned officer of their guard or party, the officer of the day, or the commanding officer; in which case the orders will be immediately notified to the commander of the guard by the officer giving them.

Sentinels will report every breach of orders or regulations they are instructed to enforce.

Sentinels must keep themselves on the alert, observing everything that takes place within sight and hearing of their post. They will carry their arms habitually at support, or on either shoulder, but will never quit them. In wet weather, if there be no sentry box, they will secure arms.

No sentinel shall quit his post or hold conversation not necessary to the proper discharge of his duty.

All persons, of whatever rank in the service, are required to observe respect towards sentinels.

In case of disorder, a sentinel must call out *the guard;* and if a fire take place, he must cry—"*Fire!*" adding the number of his post. If in either case the danger be great, he must discharge his firelock before calling out.

It is the duty of a sentinel to repeat all calls made from posts more distant from the main body of the guard than his own, and no sentinel will be posted so distant as not to be heard by the guard, either directly or through other sentinels.

Sentinels will halt, come to *attention*, and present arms to general and field officers, to the officer of the day, and to the commanding officer of the post. To all other officers they will carry arms.

When a sentinel in his sentry-box sees an officer approach, he will stand at *attention*, and as the officer passes, will salute him by bringing the left hand briskly to the musket, as high as the right shoulder.

The sentinel, at any post of the guard, when he sees any body of troops, or an officer entitled to compliment, approach, must call: "*Turn out the guard,*" and announce who approaches.

Guards do not turn out as a matter of compliment after sunset; but sentinels will, when officers in uniform approach, pay them proper attention, by facing to the proper front, and standing steady at *shouldered arms.* This will be observed until the evening is so far advanced that the sentinels begin challenging.

After retreat (or the hour appointed by the commanding officer), until broad daylight, a sentinel challenges every person who approaches him, taking, at the same time, the position of *arms port*. He will suffer no person to come nearer than within reach of his bayonet, until the person has given the countersign.

A sentinel, in challenging, will call out—"*Who comes there?*" If answered—"*Friend, with the countersign,*" and he be instructed to pass persons with the countersign, he will reply—"*Advance, friend, with the countersign.*" If answered—"*Friends,*" he will reply—"*Halt, friends, Advance, one, with the countersign.*" If answered—"*Relief,*" "*Patrol,*" or "*Grand rounds,*" he will reply—"*Halt. Advance, sergeant* (or *corporal*) *with the countersign,*" and satisfy himself that the party is what it represents itself to be. If he have no authority to pass persons with the countersign, if the wrong countersign be given, or if the persons have not the countersign, he will cause them to stand, and call—"*Corporal of the guard.*"

In the daytime, when the sentinel before the guard sees the officer of the day approach, he will call—"*Turn out the guard, officer of the day.*" The guard will be paraded, and salute with presented arms.

When any person approaches a post of the guard at night, the sentinel before the post, after challenging, causes him to halt until examined by a non-commissioned officer of the guard. If it be the officer of the day, or any other officer entitled to inspect the guard and to make the rounds, the non-commissioned officer will call—"*Turn out the guard,*" when the guard will be paraded at shouldered arms, and the officer of the guard, if he thinks necessary, may demand the countersign and parole.

The officer of the day, wishing to make the rounds, will take an escort of a non-commissioned officer and two men. When the rounds are challenged by a sentinel, the sergeant will answer—"*Grand rounds,*" and

the sentinel will reply—"*Halt, grand rounds. Advance, sergeant, with the countersign.*" Upon which the sergeant advances and gives the countersign. The sentinel will then cry—"*Advance, rounds,*" and stand at a shoulder till they have passed.

When the sentinel before the guard challenges, and is answered—"*Grand rounds,*" he will reply—"*Halt, grand rounds. Turn out the guard; grand rounds.*" Upon which the guard will be drawn up at shouldered arms. The officer commanding the guard will then order a sergeant and two men to advance; when within ten paces, the sergeant challenges. The sergeant of the grand rounds answers—"*Grand rounds.*" The sergeant of the guard replies—"*Advance, sergeant, with the countersign.*" The sergeant of the rounds advances alone, gives the countersign, and returns to his round. The sergeant of the guard calls to his officer—"*The countersign is right,*" on which the officer of the guard calls—"*Advance, rounds.*" The officer of the rounds then advances alone, the guard standing at shouldered arms. The officer of the rounds passes along the front of the guard to the officer, who keeps his post on the right, and gives him the parole. He then examines the guard, orders back his escort, and, taking a new one, proceeds in the same manner to other guards.

All material instructions given to a sentinel on post by persons entitled to make grand rounds, ought to be promptly notified to the commander of the guard.

Any general officer, or the commander of a post or garrison, may visit the guards of his command, and go the grand rounds, and be received in the same manner as prescribed for the officer of the day.

Guards.

750. Guards, in time of war, are bodies of men whose duties are to secure an army or place from being surprised by an enemy.

By a proper disposition of the guards, and by a faithful discharge of the duties imposed upon them, a whole army can at all times, and under all circumstances, be kept in readiness for action; the larger part of the army, even in the pursuit of an enemy, and momentarily expecting to meet him, may with safety seek that repose which is so necessary to keep up the physical energies of the forces; and as the guards generally constitute but a comparatively small portion of the command, and are frequently relieved, no soldier is likely to be called upon to endure an amount of fatigue greater than a man in his vigor ought to bear.

In order that the guards of an army may protect it properly, they must be so posted as to cover both the front and flanks of the position, and at the same time have possession of all the avenues of approach to it. The ordinary arrangement of guards is such, that no matter how far the outer line may lie from the main body, it may rally from point to point, if driven in by an advancing enemy, gaining strength each time, until it finally reaches the main body. Thus even the most advanced posts need never be cut off, while it would be impossible for an enemy to surprise the main body.

The usual arrangement consists of two or three lines of posts, within relief of each other, and extending around the main body as a centre, the exterior line throwing out a chain of sentinels in its front, and so distributed as to prevent the approach of any one without being seen.

751. The inner line consists of what are denominated *police guards;* there is a police guard for each regiment, which is posted within the regimental camp. These guards are of sufficient strength to supply a chain of sentinels along the front and rear of the regiment, connecting it with the regiments on the right and left, thus forming a chain of sentinels close to and all around the camp.

The next line consists of a number of strong detachments, termed *pickets;* they are posted upon the main avenues of approach to the position, and serve as supports to the exterior lines, upon which they rally when driven in by the enemy.

Next beyond the pickets is the line of *grand guards*, and of course occupying a wider circumference; they are posted in the most favorable position for observing the enemy, and throw out the extreme line, called the line of *outposts*. The line of grand guards, while supported by the pickets, in turn furnishes support to the outposts when necessary.

Besides these various lines, *patrols* are kept up between the various posts, to keep the one informed of the condition of the other; and, also between the outposts and the extreme line of sentinels, to see that the duties of the latter are properly performed.

This arrangement secures positions favorable for observation, and mutual support.

"The duties of the outposts, and of the grand guards which form their supports, are strictly those of observation. If attacked, they offer no resistance further than to enable them to feel the enemy perfectly, and never lose sight of him. The task of holding the enemy in check by a vigorous resistance, so as to procure sufficient time for the main body to make its disposition for battle, is consigned to the pickets." (MAHAN).

Police Guards.

752. The police guard is detailed every day from each regiment, and consists of two sergeants, three corporals, two musicians, and men enough to furnish the necessary sentinels and patrols. The men are taken from all the companies, from each in proportion to its strength.

The guard is commanded by a lieutenant, under the

supervision of a captain as regimental officer of the day. It furnishes ten sentinels at the camp; one over the arms of the guard; one at the colonel's tent; three on the color front; one of them over the colors; three, fifty paces in rear of the field officer's tents; and one on each flank, between it and the next regiment. If it is a flank regiment, one more sentinel is posted on the outer flank.

An advanced post is detached from the police guard, composed of a sergeant, a corporal, a drummer, and nine men to furnish sentinels and the guard over the prisoners. The men are the first of the guard roster from each company. The men of the advanced post must not leave it under any pretext. Their meals are sent to the post. The advanced post furnishes three sentinels; two a few paces in front of the post opposite the right and left wing of the regiment, posted so as to see as far as possible to the front, and one over the arms.

In the cavalry, dismounted men are employed in preference on the police guard. The mounted men on guard are sent in succession, a part at a time, to groom their horses. The advanced post is always formed of mounted men.

In each company, a corporal has charge of the stable guard. His tour begins at retreat, and ends at morning stable-call. The stable guard is large enough to relieve the men on post every two hours. They sleep in their tents, and are called by the corporal when wanted. At retreat he closes the streets of the camp with cords, or uses other precautions to prevent the escape of loose horses.

The officer of the day is charged with the order and cleanliness of the camp: a fatigue is furnished to him when the number of prisoners is insufficient to clean the camp. He has the calls beaten by the drummer of the guard.

The police guard and the advanced post pay the same honors as other guards. They take arms when an armed body approaches.

The sentinel over the colors has orders not to permit them to be moved except in the presence of an escort; to let no one touch them but the color-bearer, or the sergeant of the police guard when he is accompanied by two armed men.

The sentinels on the color front permit no soldier to take arms from the stacks, except by order of some officer, or a non-commissioned officer of the guard. The sentinel at the colonel's tent has orders to warn him, day or night, of any unusual movement in or about the camp.

The sentinels on the front, flanks and rear, see that no soldier leaves camp with horse or arms unless conducted by a non-commissioned officer. They prevent non-commissioned officers and soldiers from passing out at night, except to go to the sinks, and mark if they return. They arrest, at any time, suspicious persons prowling about the camp, and at night, every one who attempts to enter, even the soldiers of other corps. Arrested persons are sent to the officer of the guard, who sends them, if necessary, to the officer of the day.

The sentinels on the front of the advanced posts have orders to permit neither non-commissioned officers nor soldiers to pass the line, without reporting at the advanced post; to warn the advanced post of the approach of any armed body, and to arrest all suspicious persons. The sergeant sends persons so arrested to the officer of the guard, and warns him of the approach of any armed body.

The sentinel over the arms at the advanced post guards the prisoners, and keeps sight of them, and suffers no one to converse with them without permission. They are only permitted to go to the sinks one at a time, and under a sentinel.

If any one is to be passed out of camp at night, the officer of the guard sends him under escort to the ad-

vanced post, and the sergeant of the post has him passed over the chain.

At retreat, the officer of the guard has the roll of his guard called, and inspects arms to see that they are loaded and in order; and visits the advanced posts for the same purpose. The sergeant of the police guard, accompanied by two armed soldiers, folds the colors and lays them on the trestle in rear of the arms. He sees that the sutler's stores are then closed, and the men leave them, and that the kitchen fires are put out at the appointed hour.

The officer of the day satisfies himself frequently during the night of the vigilance of the police guard and advanced post. He prescribes patrols and rounds to be made by the officer and non-commissioned officers of the guard. The officer of the guard orders them when he thinks necessary. He visits the sentinels frequently.

At reveille, the police guard takes arms; the officer of the guard inspects it and the advanced post. The sergeant replants the colors in place. At retreat and reveille the advanced post takes arms; the sergeant makes his report to the officer of the guard when he visits the post.

When necessary, the camp is covered at night with small outposts, forming a double chain of sentinels. These posts are under the orders of the commander of the police guard, and are visited by his patrols and rounds.

The officer of the guard makes his report of his tour of service, including the advanced post, and sends it, after the guard is marched off, to the officer of the day.

When the regiment marches, the men of the police guard return to their companies, except those of the advanced post. In the cavalry, at the sound "boot and saddle," the officer of the guard sends one half of the men to saddle and pack; when the regiment assembles, all the men join it.

When the camping party precedes the regiment, and the new police guard marches with the camping party, the guard, on reaching the camp, forms in line thirty paces in front of the centre of the ground marked for the regiment. The officer of the guard furnishes the sentinels required by the commander of the camping party. The advanced post takes its station.

The advanced post of the old police guard takes charge of the prisoners on the march, and marches, bayonets fixed, at the centre of the regiment. On reaching camp, it turns over the prisoners to the new advanced post.

PICKETS.

753. The detail for the picket is made daily, and is composed of a lieutenant, two sergeants, four corporals, a drummer, and about forty privates for each regiment. For a smaller force, the picket is in proportion to the strength of the detachment. The duty of the pickets is to hold the enemy in check, and the points which they take up should, if possible, be susceptible of good defence; such as villages, defiles, etc.: when these advantages do not present themselves, temporary obstacles, such abatis, etc., should be resorted to. The points occupied by the pickets should be about midway between the line of outposts and the position of the main body.

Small posts should be thrown forward by the pickets, between them and the line of grand guards. These give greater security to the pickets, and furnish support to the grand guard.

GRAND GUARDS AND OUTPOSTS.

754. The numbers, strength, and position of grand guards are regulated by the commanders of brigades; in detached corps, by the commanding officer. When

it can be done, the grand guards of infantry and cavalry are combined, the cavalry furnishing the advanced sentinels. When the cavalry is weak, the grand guards are infantry, but furnished with a few cavalry soldiers, to get and carry intelligence of the enemy.

The strength of the grand guard of a brigade will depend on the strength of the regiments, the nature of the country, the position of the enemy, and the disposition of the inhabitants. It is usually commanded by a captain.

Under the supervision of the generals of division and brigade, the grand guards are especially under the direction of a field officer of the day in each brigade. In case of necessity, captains may be added to the roster of lieutenant-colonels and majors for this detail.

Grand guards usually mount at the same time as the other guards, but may mount before daybreak if the general of brigade thinks it necessary to double the outposts at this time. In this case they assemble and march without noise and during the march throw out scouts; this precaution should always be taken in the first posting of a grand guard. The doubling of guards weakens the corps and fatigues the men, and should seldom be resorted to, and never when preparing to march or fight.

755. A grand guard is conducted to its post in the first instance by the field officer of the day, guided by one of the staff officers who accompanied the general in his reconnoissance. After the post has been established, the commander sends to the field officer of the day, when necessary, a soldier of the guard to guide the relieving guard to the post. He also sends to him in the evening a corporal or trusty man of the guard, for the note containing the parole and countersign, and sends them before dark to the outposts. He will not suffer his guard to be relieved except by a guard

of the brigade, or by special orders from competent authority.

If there is no pass to be observed or defended, the grand guards are placed near the centre of the ground they are to observe, on sheltered, and, if possible, high ground, the better to conceal their strength and observe the enemy; they ought not to be placed near the edge of a wood. When, during the day, they are placed very near, or in sight of the enemy, they fall back at night on parts selected farther to the rear.

After a grand guard is posted, the first care of the commander and of the field officer of the day is to get news of the enemy; then to reconnoitre his position, and the roads, bridges, fords, and defiles. This reconnoissance determines the force and position of the outposts and their sentinels day and night. These posts, when of infantry, should be about 200 paces in front of the line of grand guards, and of cavalry from 600 to 800; and are commanded by officers or non-commissioned officers, according to their importance. Cavalry posts may be relieved every four or eight hours.

The commander of a grand guard receives detailed instructions from the general and field officers of the day of the brigade, and instructs the commanders of the outposts as to their duties, and the arrangements for the defence or retreat. The commanders of grand guards may, in urgent cases, change the positions of the outposts. If the outposts are to change their position at night, they wait until the grand guard has gotten its position, and darkness hides their movements from the enemy; then march silently and rapidly under charge of an officer.

In detached corps, small posts of picked men are at night sent forward on the roads by which the enemy may attack or turn the position. They watch the forks of the roads, keep silence, conceal themselves, light no fires, and often change place. They announce

the approach of an enemy by signals agreed upon, and retreat by routes examined during the day, to places selected, and rejoin the guard at daybreak.

Grand guards have special orders in each case, and the following in all cases: to inform the nearest posts and the field officer of the day, or the general of brigade, of the march and movements of the enemy, and of the attacks they receive or fear; to examine every person passing near the post, particularly those coming from without; to arrest suspicious persons, and all soldiers and camp followers who try to pass out without permission, and to send to the general, unless otherwise directed all country people who come in.

756. All out-guards stand to arms at night on the approach of patrols, rounds, or other parties; the sentinel over the arms will call them out.

The sentinels and videttes are placed on points from which they can see farthest, taking care not to break their connection with each other or with their posts. They are concealed from the enemy as much as possible by walls, or trees, or elevated ground. It is generally even of more advantage not to be seen than to see far. They should not be placed near covers, where the enemy may capture them. A sentinel should always be ready to fire; videttes carry their carbines or pistols in their hands. A sentinel must be sure of the presence of an enemy before he fires; once satisfied of that, he must fire, though all defence on his part be useless, as the safety of the post may depend on it. Sentinels fire on all persons deserting to the enemy.

If a sentinel's post must be where he cannot communicate with the guard, a corporal and three men are detached for it, or the sentinels are doubled, that one may communicate with the guard. During the day communication may be made by signals, such as raising a cap or handkerchief. At night the sentinels are placed on low ground, the better to see objects against the sky.

To lessen the duty of rounds, and keep more men on the alert at night, sentinels on outposts are relieved every hour. To prevent sentinels from being surprised, it is sometimes well to precede the countersign by signals, such as striking the musket with the hand, striking the hands together, etc.

On the approach of any one at night, the outpost sentinel orders—"*Halt!*" If the order is not obeyed after being repeated once, he fires. If obeyed, he calls—"*Who goes there?*" If answered—"*Rounds,*" or "*Patrol,*" he says—"*Advance with the countersign.*" If more than one advance at the same time, or the person who advances fails to give the countersign or signal agreed on, the sentinel fires, and falls back on his guard. The sentinel over the arms, as soon as *his* hail is answered, turns out the guard, and the corporal goes to reconnoitre. When it is desirable to hide the position of the sentinel from the enemy, the hail is replaced by *signals;* the sentinels give the signal, and those approaching the counter signal.

With *raw* troops, or when the light troops of the enemy are numerous and active, and when the country is broken or wooded, the night stormy or dark, sentinels should be doubled. In this case, while one watches, the other, called a *flying sentinel,* moves about, examining the paths and hollows.

The commanders of grand guards visit the sentinels often; change their positions when necessary; make them repeat their orders; teach them under what circumstances and at what signals to retire, and particularly not to fall back directly on their guard if pursued, but to lead the enemy in a circuit.

757. At night, half the men of the grand guard off post watch under arms, while the rest lie down, arms by their side. The horses are always bridled; the horsemen hold the reins and must not sleep. An hour before break of day, infantry grand guards stand to arms, and cavalry mount. At the outposts some of

the infantry are all night under arms, some of the cavalry on horseback.

The commander of a grand guard regulates the numbers, the hours, and the march of patrols and rounds, according to the strength of his command, and the necessity for precaution; and, accompanied by those who are to command the patrols and rounds during the night, he will reconnoitre all the routes they are to follow. Patrols and rounds march slowly, in silence, and with great precaution; halt frequently to listen and examine the ground. The rounds consist of an officer or non-commissioned officer, and two or three men. Towards the break of day the patrols ought to be more frequent, and sent to greater distances. They examine the hollow ways and ground likely to conceal an enemy, but with great caution, to avoid being cut off, or engaged in an unequal combat; if they meet the enemy, they fire and attempt to stop his march. While the patrols are out, the outposts are under arms.

Cavalry patrols should examine the country to a greater distance than infantry, and report to the infantry guard every thing they observe. The morning patrols and scouts do not return until broad daylight; and when they return, the night sentinels are withdrawn, and the posts for the day resumed.

On their return, commanders of patrols report in regard to the ground and everything they have observed of the movements of the enemy, or of his posts, and the commander of the grand guard reports to the field officers of the day. The fires of grand guards should be hidden by a wall, ditch, or other screen. To deceive the enemy, fires are sometimes made on unoccupied ground. Fires are not permitted at small posts liable to surprise.

If a body of troops attempt to enter the camp at night, unless their arrival has been announced, or the commander is known to, or is the bearer of a written

order to the commander of the grand guard, he stops them, and sends the command under escort to the field officer of the day, and at the same time warns the posts near him.

Bearers of flags are not permitted to pass the outer chain of sentinels; their faces are turned from the post or army; if necessary their eyes are bandaged; a non-commissioned officer stays with them to prevent indiscretion on the part of sentinels.

The commander of the guard receipts for dispatches, and sends them to the field officer of the day or general of brigade, and dismisses the bearer; but if he has discovered what ought to be concealed from the enemy, he is detained as long as necessary.

Deserters are disarmed at the outposts, and sent to the commander of the grand guard, who gets from them all the information he can concerning the enemy. If many come at night, they are received *cautiously, a few at a time.* They are sent in the morning to the field officer of the day, or to the nearest post or camp, to be conducted to the general of the brigade. All suspected persons are secreted by the commanders of the outposts.

ARTICLE XIII.

DUTIES OF CAPTAINS—COMPANIES—DUTIES IN CAMP AND GARRISON, ETC.

758. Captains or commanders of companies fill one of the most important stations in the service, when they are viewed in relation to the direct influence they exercise upon the soldiery; to them attaches the high responsibility of the instruction, good order, efficiency, and discipline of their companies; and no one should be willing to accept the post who is not qualified, or ready to qualify himself, for a faithful discharge of all the duties of the office.

It is the duty of every captain to make himself familiar with tactics, or at least so much of it as will enable him to command his company properly in every situation; and to become perfectly acquainted with its interior management.

In the case of vacancy in the office of captain, or in his absence, the command of the company devolves on the officer next in rank. Captains should require their lieutenants to assist them in the performance of all company duties, the knowledge thus acquired being essential to every company officer.

762. When a militia company is called into service, the captain should, at the earliest possible moment, have it properly uniformed and equipped, and taught how to take care of its arms, clothing, etc.; each man should be provided with his knapsack, haversack, blanket, knife and fork, spoon, tin plate, and cup.

Canteens are also necessary in most cases; they are worn over the haversack.

763. The captain should cause the men of his company to be numbered in a regular series, including the non-commissioned officers, and divided into several squads, each to be put under the charge of a non-commissioned officer. As far as practicable, the men of each squad are quartered together.

Each of the lieutenants is charged with a squad for the supervision of its order and cleanliness; and captains should require their subalterns to assist them in the performance of *all* company duties.

The utmost attention should be paid by captains to the cleanliness of their men, as to their persons, clothing, arms, accoutrements, and equipments, and also as to their quarters or tents.

The name of each soldier should be labelled on his bunk in quarters, and his company number should be placed against his arms and accoutrements.

The arms are placed in arm-racks, the stoppers in the muzzles, the cocks let down, and the bayonets in their scabbards, the accoutrements suspended over the arms, and the swords or sabres, when these are worn, hung by the belts on pegs.

The knapsack of each man should be placed at the foot of his bunk when he is in quarters, packed with his effects, and ready to be slung; the overcoat rolled, strapped, and placed under the knapsack; the cap on a shelf, and his boots well cleaned. Dirty clothes should be kept in an appropriate part of the knapsack; nothing to be put under the bedding.

Cooking utensils and table furniture should be clean, and in their appropriate places; blacking and brushes out of sight; the fuel in boxes.

The cleaning up should take place at least once a week. The chiefs of squads should cause bunks and bedding to be overhauled, floors cleaned, and arms, accoutrements, etc., all put in order.

Non-commissioned officers, in charge of squads, should be held immediately responsible that their men

observe what is prescribed above; that they wash their hands and faces daily; that they brush or comb their heads and beards; that those who go on duty put their arms, accoutrements, dress, etc., in the best order.

Commanders of companies should see that the arms and accoutrements in possession of the men are always kept in good order, and that proper care is taken in cleaning them.

Arms should not be taken to pieces without permission of an officer. Bright barrels should be kept clean and free from rust without polishing them; care should be taken not to bruise or bend the barrel. After firing, wash out the bore, wipe it dry, and then pass a bit of cloth slightly greased, to the bottom. In these operations, a rod of wood with a loop on one end is to be used instead of the rammer. The barrel, when not in use, should be closed with a stopper. For exercise, each man should keep himself provided with a piece of sole leather to fit the cap or countersink of the hammer, to prevent breaking the nipple.

Arms should not be left loaded in armories, quarters, or tents, or when the men are off duty, except by special orders. The ammunition in the possession of the men should be inspected frequently, and any damaged, wasted, or lost by neglect, should be paid for.

In camp or quarters, the officers should visit the kitchen daily and inspect the kettles, food, etc., and at all times carefully attend to the messing and economy of their companies.

The company rations are usually taken charge of by the orderly sergeant, and issued daily to the cooks by whom they are prepared and served to the company. The men of the company serve in turn as cooks, two being the usual number serving at once. When in camp, the men present themselves at meal times to the cooks, who issue to each man in turn his proper allowance; in garrison, or quarters the tables are set

out, and the cooks place each man's ration on his plate, and in his cup, before the company is marched in.

When not actually in the field the ration is in most cases more than sufficient, so that by care on the part of the orderly sergeant and cooks, there is more or less saved on the rations of the company; this saving is sold for the benefit of the company, and constitutes what is denominated the *Company Fund.*

DUTIES IN CAMP AND GARRISON.

764. The duties in camp and garrison are to be conducted, as far as practicable, in the same manner and on the same principles.

The *Reveille* is the signal for the men to rise, and the sentinels to leave off challenging. It is usually sounded at the dawn of day, except when the troops are on the march, when the signal may be sounded at a much earlier hour. The men form on their company parade grounds, and as soon as the reveille ceases the rolls are called by the orderly sergeants, *superintended by a commissioned officer.*

Immediately after the roll call, (after stable duty in the cavalry and light artillery), the tents or quarters should be put in order by the men of the companies, superintended by chiefs of squads; the parades, streets of the camp, etc., are cleaned by the *police* party of the day, in charge of a non-commissioned officer, and superintended by the officer of the day, and the guard house or guard tent by the guard or the prisoners, if there are any.

Breakfast call is sounded at — o'clock in the morning, and is the signal for breakfast.

The *Troop* sounds at — o'clock in the morning for the purpose of assembling the men for duty, inspection at guard mounting, and morning dress parade, when the commanding officer commands it.

The *Surgeon's call* is to sound or beat at — o'clock in the morning, when the sick, able to go about, are conducted to the hospital by the first sergeants of companies, who hand to the surgeon a list of all the sick in the company.

After the surgeon has passed upon the sick, the first sergeants proceed to make off the morning reports of their companies, which, after being signed by their captains, are taken to regimental head quarters at first sergeant's call.

The morning report of the company is made off in a book kept for that purpose, called the *morning report book.*

The *Dinner call* is sounded at — o'clock, and is the signal for dinner.

The *Retreat* is sounded at sunset, when there is a roll-call and the orders for the day are read. When the weather permits, there is a dress parade at retreat, and the orders are read out at the close of it. Each regiment or battalion has an independent parade, commanded by the colonel.

The *Tattoo* is sounded at — o'clock in the evening, when the rolls are called; no soldier is allowed to be out of his tent or quarters after this hour, without special permission.

The *Drummers' call* is beaten by the drums of the police guard five minutes before the time of beating the stated calls, when the field music assembles before the colors of their respective regiments, and as soon as the beat begins on the right is taken up along the line.

Calls for drills are sounded at such hours as the commanding officer may designate.

765. Daily duties must be announced in order, and the officers to perform them are detailed according to the rules of the roster.

The number and rank of the officers for daily duty, are to be regulated by the strength and circumstances

of the camp or garrison ; the officers detailed for duty, should remain in or about the camp or garrison during their tours of duty.

Besides the officers detailed for guard duty, the officers for daily duties in large commands are as follows:

A General officer of the day for each division ; *a field officer of the day* for each brigade ; and *a regimental officer of the day* for each regiment.

In camps or garrisons of one regiment or less, the officers are as follows: *officer of the day*, and *officer of the guard*.

The *General of the day* is to superintend the regularity and discipline of the camp of the division, visit the guards and outposts, call out and inspect the guards as often and at such times as he thinks proper; to receive all reports of guards, and make immediate communication of any extraordinary circumstances, to his commanding officer, or to the General-in-chief.

The *Field officer of the day* has the immediate superintendence of the camp of the brigade ; he is to be present at the mounting and dismounting of the brigade or grand guards ; he is to call them out to inspect them ; to order such patrols, posts, and outposts as may be necessary ; to see that the grand guard is vigilant, that none are absent, and that their arms and accoutrements are in order; that the officers and non-commissioned officers are acquainted with their duty, and that the sentries are properly posted, and have received proper orders.

The *Regimental officer of the day* in each regiment, and in commands less than a regiment, is charged with the order and cleanliness of the camp or garrison ; he has the calls beaten by the drummer of the police guard ; he attends the parading of the guards, and orders the roll to be called frequently and at unexpected periods, and reports everything extraordinary to the commander of the garrison or camp ; he is to visit the hospital at various hours and make a report

of its state to the commanding officer. He should satisfy himself frequently during the night, of the vigilance of the police guard, and prescribe patrols and rounds to be made by the officer of the guard. He should give attention to the condition of the sinks, the regulation of the camp fires, the removal of rubbish, etc.; and for these purposes a fatigue party will be furnished him when necessary.

CAMPS.

Camp of Infantry.

766. Each company has its tents in two files, facing on a street perpendicular to the color line. The width of the street depends on the front of the camp, but should not be less than five paces. The interval between the ranks of tents is two paces; between the files of tents of adjacent companies, two paces; between regiments, twenty-two paces.

The color line is ten paces in front of the front rank of tents. The kitchens are twenty paces behind the rear rank of company tents; the non-commissioned staff and sutler, twenty paces in rear of the kitchens; the company officers, twenty paces farther in rear; and the field and staff, twenty paces in rear of the company officers.

The company officers are in rear of their respective companies; the captains on the right.

The colonel and lieutenant-colonel are near the centre of the line of field and staff; the adjutant, a major and surgeon, on the right; the quartermaster, a major and assistant surgeon, on the left.

The police guard is at the centre of the line of the non-commissioned staff, the tents facing to the front, the stacks of arms on theleft.

The advanced post of the police guard is about 200 paces in front of the color line, and opposite the centre

of the regiment or on the best ground; the prisoners' tent about four paces in rear. In a regiment of the second line, the advanced post of the police guard is 200 paces in rear of the line of its field and staff.

The horses of the staff officers and of the baggage train are twenty-five paces in rear of the tents of the field and staff; the wagons are parked on the same line, and the men of the train camped near them.

The sinks of the men are 150 paces in front of the color line—those of the officers 100 paces in rear of the train. Both are concealed by bushes. When convenient, the sinks of the men may be placed in rear or on a flank. A portion of the earth dug out for sinks to be thrown back occasionally.

The front of the camp of a regiment of 1000 men in two ranks will be 400 paces, or one-fifth less paces than the number of files, if the camp is to have the same front as the troops in order of battle. But the front may be reduced to 190 paces by narrowing the company streets to five paces; and if it be desirable to reduce the front still more, the tents of companies may be pitched in single file—those of a division facing on the same street.

Cantonments.

770. The cavalry should be placed under shelter whenever the distance from the enemy, and from the ground where the troops are to form for battle, permit it. Taverns and farm-houses, with large stables and free access, are selected for quartering them.

The colonel indicates the place of assembling in case of alarm. It should generally be outside the cantonment; the egress from it should be free; the retreat upon the other positions secure, and roads leading to it on the side of the enemy obstructed.

The necessary orders being given, as in establishing a camp, the picket and grand guards are posted.

A sentinel may be placed on a steeple or high house, and then the troops are marched to the quarters. The men sleep in the stables, if it is thought necessary.

The above applies in the main to infantry. Near the enemy, companies or platoons should be collected, as much as possible, in the same houses. If companies must be separated, they should be divided by platoons or squads. All take arms at daybreak.

When cavalry and infantry canton together, the latter furnish the guards by night, and the former by day.

Troops cantoned in presence of the enemy should be covered by advanced guards and natural or artificial obstacles. Cantonments taken during a cessation of hostilities should be established in rear of a line of defence, and in front of the point on which the troops would concentrate to receive an attack. The general commanding-in-chief assigns the limits of their cantonments to the divisions, the commanders of divisions to brigades, and the commanders of brigades post their regiments. The position for each corps in case of attack is carefully pointed out by the generals.

Marches.

771. For marching, the force, if a large one, is divided into as many columns as circumstances permit, without weakening any one too much. The object of the movement and the nature of the ground determine the order of march, the kind of troops in each column, and the number of columns. They ought to preserve their communications, and be within supporting distance of each other. The commander of each column ought to know the strength and direction of the others.

The advance and rear-guards are usually light troops; their strength and composition depend on the nature of the ground and the position of the enemy.

They serve to cover the movements of the army, and to hold the enemy in check until the general has time to make his arrangements.

The "*general*" sounded one hour before the time of marching, is the signal to strike tents, to load the wagons, pack horses, etc., and send them to the place of assembling. The fires are then put out, and care taken to avoid burning straw, etc., or giving the enemy any other indication of the movements.

The "march" beats in the infantry, and the "advance" is sounded in the cavalry, in succession, as each is to take its place in the column. The infantry forms in column of companies or platoons; the cavalry in column of twos, fours, or of platoons; and the artillery by sections.

When the army should form suddenly to meet the enemy, the "*long-roll*" is beat, and "*to horse*" sounded. The troops form rapidly in front of their camp.

Batteries of artillery and their caissons move with the corps to which they are attached; the field train and ambulances march at the rear of the column; and the baggage with the rear-guard.

After the march has commenced, the troops habitually take the route step. The men should not be allowed to straggle, or leave ranks for any but a necessary purpose, and then but for a few moments at a time.

The general and field officers frequently stop, or send officers to the rear, to see that the troops march in the prescribed order, and keep their distances.

In approaching a defile, the colonels are warned; they close their regiments as they come up; each regiment passes separately, at an accelerated pace, and in as close order as possible. The leading regiment having passed, and left room enough for the whole column in close order, halts, and moves again as soon as the last regiment is through. In the cavalry, each

squadron, before quickening the pace to rejoin the column, takes its original order of march.

When a march is to be continued from day to day, the daily march should commence at a very early hour; the rate of going should be as regular as possible, not more than two and a half miles an hour; and the guides should be careful to preserve their distance, so as to prevent oscillations in the rear of the column, which are very fatiguing to the men. At the expiration of every hour, or little more, the halt is sounded, when the men are allowed to take their ease for about ten minutes, when the march is resumed. In this way a day's march of twenty miles or more may be made by mid-day, or a little later: the men get their dinners after getting into camp, have the afternoon to rest, wash their clothing, clean their arms, etc., and are fresh for an early start on the following day.

In forced marches, or where the march is a long one, the halt at noon may be from an hour to an hour and a half, when the men may loosen their belts, take a lunch, smoke and take their ease in any way they choose, until the hour for resuming the march; the march may be continued until the middle of the afternoon, and still the men will have time to get their cup of hot coffee for supper, and make themselves comfortable for the night. The march of the first two days should be short, after that it may be increased to the required number of miles; the march from day to day should be as nearly of equal length as the convenience of fuel and water, etc., for camping purposes will admit.

772. A *camping party*, headed by the quartermaster of the command, precedes the column for the purpose of selecting and marking off the camp before the arrival of the troops. The camp is marked by placing camp-colors on the line intended for the color line of the command.

When the column reaches the camp-ground, the infantry comes into line on the color line.

The number of men to be furnished for guards, pickets and orderlies; the fatigue parties to be sent for wood and water for the cooks, etc.; the hour of marching, etc., are then announced by the brigadier-generals to the colonels, and by them to the field officers—the adjutant and captains formed in front of the regiment, the first sergeants taking post behind their captains. The adjutant then makes the details, and the first sergeants warn the men. The regimental officer of the day forms the picket, and sends the guards to their posts. The colors are then planted at the centre of the color line, and the arms are stacked on the line. The fatigue parties proceed to their duties, and the men of the company not on detail pitch the tents.

SOLDIER'S RATIONS

AND MODE OF COOKING THEM.

The regular daily ration of food issued to the troops in the Confederate States service, is three-fourths pound of fresh or salt beef; eighteen ounces of bread, or one and a fourth pounds of corn meal, and at the rate of one hundred rations of eight quarts of peas or beans, or, in lieu thereof, ten pounds of rice; six pounds of coffee, twelve pounds of sugar, four quarts of vinegar, and one and a half pounds of tallow, or one and a fourth pounds of adamantine, or one pound of sperm candles; four pounds of soap, and two quarts of salt.

On a campaign, or on marches, or on board transports, the ration of hard bread is one pound.

Fresh beef, when it can be procured, should be furnished at least twice a week; the beef to be procured, if possible, by contract.

RECEIPTS.

Soldier's Soup for 25 *Men.*—Take 15 quarts of water to 25 pounds of meat, 2 small tablespoonfuls of salt, half a one of pepper; about two pounds of rice, put in while boiling, and what vegetables, fresh or preserved, that can be procured—say three pounds.

Pork Soup for 25 *Men.*—In 6 gallons of cold water put 12 pounds of pork, 3 quarts of beans, 2 pounds of rice, season to suit; let boil one hour and a half; soak the beans overnight.

Irish Stew for Men.—Take 25 pounds mutton, veal, beef, or pork, cut into pieces six inches square, 4 pounds of onions, 8 pounds of potatoes, 4 tablespoon-

fuls of salt, 1 of pepper, 8 quarts of water; cook it from one to two hours, slowly, thicken the gravy with flour mixed into smooth paste with water or potatoes mashed fine.

Tea for 25 *Men.*—Allow 12 quarts of water; put the rations of tea—a large teaspoonful to each—in a cloth tied up very loosely, throw it into the boiler while it is boiling hard for a moment; then take off the boiler, cover it, and let it stand full 10 minutes, when it will be ready for use; first add sugar and milk, if to be had, at the rate of 3 pints or 2 quarts of milk, and 1 or 1½ pounds of sugar.

Pork with Peas or Beans for 25 *Men.*—To 14 pounds of pork add 6 pounds of peas or beans, put them in a cloth to boil, tying it very loosely; place them both in the boiler, let them boil about two hours; then take out the pork, add some flour to the gravy, and put the peas or beans in it, with two or three onions cut up fine; let it boil a little longer, mash up the vegetables very finely, and serve them round the dish with the meat.

Plain Stewed Meat for 25 *Men.*—Take 14 pounds of mutton, beef, veal or pork, cut it into chunks and put it into the boiler; add 4 quarts of water, 2 quarts to a teaspoonful of salt and half teaspoonful of pepper, 8 or 10 onions cut in pieces; let it boil half an hour, then let it stew slowly from half an hour to one hour longer, adding one pound of rice, potatoes, or any vegetable that can be obtained; thicken the gravy with flour mixed to a smooth paste in cold water.

Salt Pork with Potatoes and Cabbage for 25 *Men.*—Take 15 pounds of pork, extract the bones, 3 pounds of potatoes, 2 winter cabbages, let it boil for two hours, 10 quarts of water, serve the meat with the vegetable round it; the gravy will make a good broth with peas, beans or rice added, also a little onion. Ship biscuit broken into the broth makes a very nutricious soup.

To Fry any kind of Meat.—Get your frying pan very hot, put in some fat pork which will immediately melt, then put in the meat you wish to fry; (a small teaspoonful of salt, and a quarter of a teaspoonful of pepper, to every pound of meat;) when done, lay the meat on a dish, add one pint of water to the fat in the frying pan, a few slices of onion, or two teaspoonfuls of vinegar; thicken it with a little flour and pour it over the cooked meat. Any sauce, or a few chopped pickles may be substituted for the vinegar or onions.

Coffee for 25 Men.—Take 12 quarts of water, when it boils add 20 ounces of coffee, mix it well, and leave it on the fire till it commences to boil, then take it off, and pour into it a little more than one quart of cold water, let it stand in a warm place full 10 minutes; the dregs will settle to the bottom, and the coffee be perfectly clear. Pour it then into another vessel, leaving the dregs in the first. Add sugar, four teaspoonfuls to the quart. If you can get milk, leave out five quarts of water in the above receipt; and put milk in its place.

Peas or Bean Soup for 25 Men.—Take 14 pounds of pork, 8 quarts peas, or beans, 20 quarts of water, 25 teaspoonfuls of sugar, 12 of pepper, and several large onions; boil gently till the vegetables are soft—from four to five hours.

Receipt for a small quantity of Mashed Meat.—Cut the meat in very small pieces; heat the frying pan; put into it one pint of water, half a teaspoonful of salt, and a teaspoonful of flour, and let it cook fifteen minutes. Salt meat must be cooked the same, omitting the salt, in its place putting a small teaspoonful of sugar, spices, or pickles, chopped fine. Dish it on some ship biscuit. Steak, chops, sausages, bacon, slices of any kind of meat, can be cooked in a frying pan, with a little melted fat at the bottom. Salt meat should always be soaked.—*Veil's Hand-Book of Active Service.*

SUGGESTIONS TO SOLDIERS.

In an ordinary campaign sickness disables or destroys three times as many as the sword.

On a march, from April to November, the entire clothing should be a colored flannel shirt, with a loosely buttoned collar, cotton drawers, woolen pantaloons, shoes and stockings, and a light-colored felt hat, with broad brim to protect the eyes and face from the glare of the sun and from the rain, and a substantial but not heavy coat when off duty.

Sun-stroke is most effectually prevented by wearing a silk handkerchief in the crown of the hat.

Colored blankets are best, and if lined with brown drilling the warmth and durability are doubled, while the protection against dampness from lying on the ground is almost complete.

Never lie or sit down on the grass or bare earth for a moment; rather use your hat—a handkerchief, even, is a great protection. The warmer you are the greater need for this protection, as a damp vapor is immediately generated, to be absorbed by the clothing, and to cool you off too rapidly.

While marching, or on other active duty, the more thirsty you are the more essential is it to safety of life itself to rinse out the mouth two or three times, and *then* take a swallow of water at a time, with short intervals. A brave French General, on a forced march, fell dead on the instant by drinking largely of cold water, when snow was on the ground.

Abundant sleep is essential to bodily efficiency, and to that alertness of mind which is all-important in an engagement; and few things more certainly and more

effectually prevent sound sleep than eating heartily after sundown, especially after a heavy march or desperate battle.

Nothing is more certain to secure endurance and capability of long-continued effort, than the avoidance of everything as a drink except cold water, not excluding coffee at breakfast. Drink as little as possible of even cold water.

After any sort of exhausting effort, a cup of coffee, hot or cold, is an admirable sustainer of the strength, until nature begins to recover herself.

Never eat heartily just before a great undertaking; because the nervous power is irresistibly drawn to the stomach to manage the food eaten, thus drawing off that supply which the brain and muscle so much need.

If persons will drink brandy, it is incomparably safer to do so *after* an effort than before; for it can give only a transient strength, lasting but a few minutes; but as it can never be known how long any given effort is to be kept in continuance, and if longer than the few minutes, the body becomes more feeble than it would have been without the stimulus, it is clear that its use *before* an effort is always hazardous and is always unwise.

Never go to sleep, especially after a great effort, even in hot weather, without some covering over you.

Under all circumstances, rather than lie down on the bare ground, lie in the hollow of two logs placed together, or across several smaller pieces of wood, laid side by side; or sit on your hat, leaning against a tree. A nap of ten or fifteen minutes in that position will refresh you more than an hour on the bare earth, with the additional advantage of perfect safety.

A *cut* is less dangerous than a bullet wound and heals more rapidly.

If from any wound the blood spirts out in jets, instead of a steady stream, you will die in a few min-

utes unless it is remedied; because an artery has been divided, and that takes the blood directly from the fountain of life. To stop this instantly, tie a handkerchief or other cloth very loosely between the wound and the heart; put a stick, bayonet, or ramrod *between* the skin and the handkerchief, and twist around until the bleeding ceases, and keep it thus until the surgeon arrives.

If the blood flows in a slow, regular stream, a vein has been pierced, and the handkerchief must be on the other side of the wound from the heart—that is, *below* the wound.

A bullet through the abdomen (belly or stomach) is more certainly fatal than if aimed at the head or heart; for in the latter cases the bill is often glanced off by the bone, or follows round it under the skin; but when it enters the stomach or bowels, from any direction, death is inevitable under all conceivable circumstances, but is scarcely ever instantaneous.

Let the whole beard grow, but not longer than some three inches. This strengthens and thickens its growth, and thus makes a more perfect protection for the lungs against dust, and of the throat against winds and cold in winter, while in the summer a greater perspiration of the skin is induced, with an increase of evaporation; hence greater coolness of the parts on the outside, while the throat is less feverish, thirsty, and dry.

Avoid fats and fat meat in summer and all warm days.

Whenever possible, take a plunge into any lake or running stream every morning as soon as you get up. If none at hand, endeavor to wash the body all over as soon as you leave your bed, for cleanliness acts like a charm against all diseases, always either warding them off altogether, or greatly mitigating their severity and shortening their duration.

Date Due

DEC 11 1944

P.R.
973.742 R526 176384